



3 1761 08824377 9


LAL.D

M5156KX

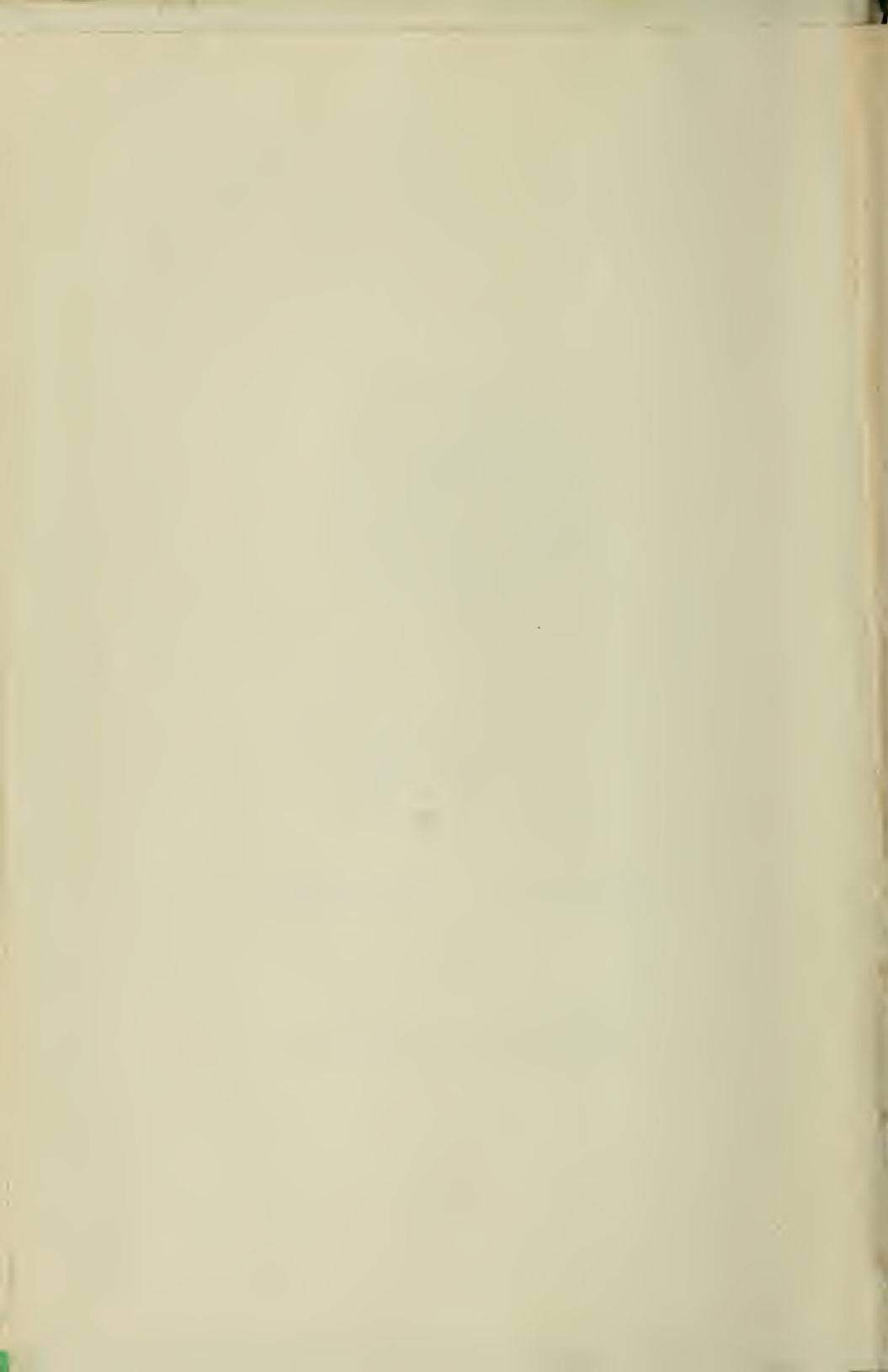
.Ea



Presented to
The Library
of the
University of Toronto
by
Professor W.S. Milner



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2011 with funding from
University of Toronto



LATIN PHRASE-BOOK



5156kx
Fa

LATIN PHRASE-BOOK

BY

C. ^{Carl} MEISSNER

TRANSLATED FROM THE SIXTH GERMAN EDITION

WITH THE ADDITION OF
SUPPLEMENTARY PHRASES AND REFERENCES

BY

H. W. AUDEN, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER AT FETTES COLLEGE, EDINBURGH ; LATE SCHOLAR
OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, AND BELL
UNIVERSITY SCHOLAR

258432
3 9.31

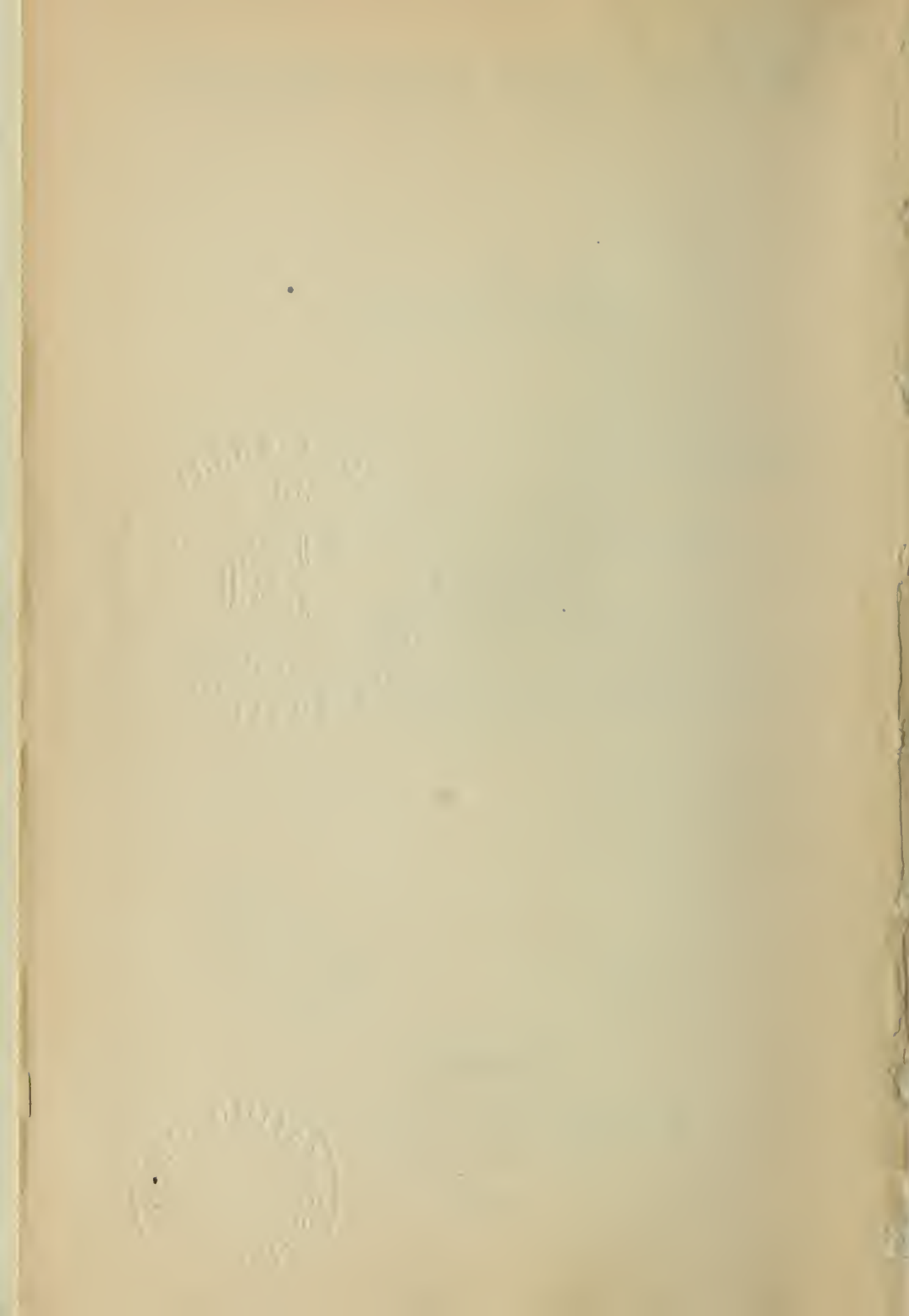
London

MACMILLAN AND CO.

AND NEW YORK

1894

All rights reserved



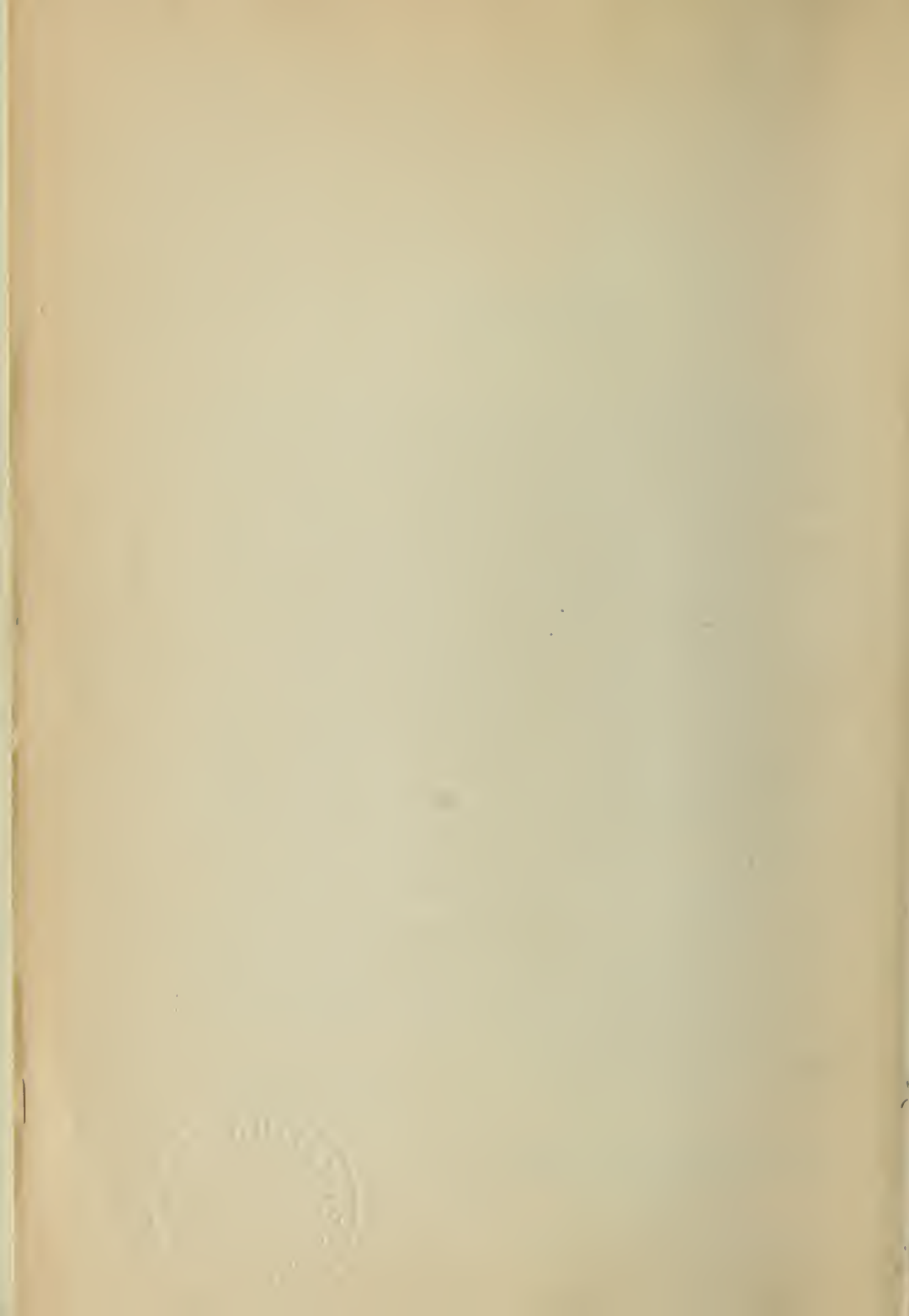
PREFACE

ALTHOUGH, ideally speaking, a phrase-book should always be compiled by the pupil himself from his own individual observation, yet in these days, when an extended curriculum tends to curtail considerably the amount of Latin read, it seems to me that anything which may help boys to some knowledge of Latinity in a short time is not wholly useless. Hence this translation. The use of such books as *Meissner's Phraseologie* involves no new and untried principles, witness the excellent results obtained in Germany, where the book has passed through six editions. It has also been translated into French (the translation is now in its third edition) and Italian.

My best thanks are due to Professor Meissner for his courtesy in allowing me to make this translation, also to Professor Pascal of Reims, to whose admirable translation I am much indebted.

H. W. AUDEN.

FETTES COLLEGE, EDINBURGH,
1894.



VII

CONTENTS

	PAGE
I. THE WORLD AND NATURE—	
1. THE WORLD—CREATION	1
2. THE EARTH AND ITS SURFACE	2
3. WATER—RIVERS—SEA	3
4. FIRE	5
5. AIR—SKY—CLIMATE—HEAVENLY BODIES	6
6. NATURAL PHENOMENA	7
II. SPACE AND TIME—	
1. POINTS OF THE COMPASS—SITUATION	9
2. BOUNDARY—TERRITORY—DISTANCE	10
3. ROAD—TRAVEL	11
4. COMING—GOING	13
5. RIDING—DRIVING	14
6. WALKING—FOOTSTEPS—DIRECTION	15
7. MOVEMENT IN GENERAL	16
8. TIME IN GENERAL	18
9. YEAR—SEASONS	21
10. DAY—DIVISIONS OF THE DAY	22
III. PARTS OF THE HUMAN BODY	24
IV. PROPERTIES OF THE HUMAN BODY—	
1. FEELINGS—SENSATIONS—POWERS	29
2. BIRTH—LIFE	30
3. TIME OF LIFE	32

	PAGE
4. HUNGER—THIRST	34
5. LAUGHTER—TEARS	35
6. HEALTH—SICKNESS	36
7. SLEEP—DREAMS	37
8. DEATH	39
9. BURIAL	40

V. HUMAN LIFE; ITS VARIOUS RELATIONS AND CONDITIONS—

1. CIRCUMSTANCE—SITUATION—DIFFICULTY	41
2. COMMENCEMENT—END—RESULT	43
3. CAUSE—MOTIVE—ORIGIN	44
4. REGARD—IMPORTANCE—INFLUENCE—POWER— INCLINATION	45
5. OPPORTUNITY—POSSIBILITY—OCCASION—CHANCE	47
6. SUCCESS—GOOD FORTUNE	49
7. MISFORTUNE—FATE—RUIN	50
8. DANGER—RISK—SAFETY	52
9. ASSISTANCE—DELIVERANCE—CONSOLATION	54
10. RICHES—WANT—POVERTY	55
11. UTILITY—ADVANTAGE—HARM—DISADVANTAGE	56
12. GOODWILL—KINDNESS—INCLINATION—FAVOUR	57
13. BENEFIT—GRATITUDE—RECOMPENSE	59
14. MERIT—VALUE—REWARD	60
15. REQUESTS—WISHES—COMMISSIONS—ORDERS	61
16. FRIENDSHIP—ENMITY—RECONCILIATION	62
17. AUTHORITY—DIGNITY	64
18. PRAISE—APPROVAL—BLAME—REPROACH	65
19. RUMOUR—GOSSIP—NEWS—MENTION	66
20. FAME—REPUTATION	67
21. HONOUR—DISGRACE—IGNOMINY	69
22. EFFORT—INDUSTRY—LABOUR—EXERTION	70
23. BUSINESS—LEISURE—INACTIVITY—IDLENESS	72
24. PLEASURE—RECREATION	74

VI. THE MIND; ITS FUNCTIONS—

1. GENIUS—TALENT—INTELLIGENCE	75
-----------------------------------------	----

	PAGE
2. IMAGINATION—THOUGHT	76
3. CONCEPTIONS—IDEALS—PERFECTION	77
4. OPINION—PREJUDICE—CONJECTURE	78
5. TRUTH—ERROR	80
6. CHOICE—DOUBT—SCRUPLE	82
7. KNOWLEDGE—CERTAINTY—PERSUASION	83
8. PLAN—ADVICE—DELIBERATION	84
9. RESOLVE—DESIGN—INTENTION	85
10. OBJECT—AIM—HESITATION—DELAY	86
11. REMEMBRANCE—FORGETFULNESS	87
12. THEORY—PRACTICE—EXPERIENCE	90

VII. THE ARTS AND SCIENCES—

1. SCIENTIFIC KNOWLEDGE IN GENERAL—LITERATURE	91
2. LEARNING—ERUDITION	93
3. CULTURE—CIVILISATION	95
4. EDUCATION — INSTRUCTION — SCHOOL — PROFESSION	96
5. EXAMPLE—PATTERN—PRECEDENT	99
6. PHILOSOPHY	101
7. THE PARTS OF PHILOSOPHY	102
8. SYSTEM—METHOD—PRINCIPLES	103
9. SPECIES—DEFINITION — CLASSIFICATION — CONSECTION	104
10. PROOF—REFUTATION	106
11. CONCLUSION—HYPOTHESIS—INFERENCE	106
12. DEBATE—CONTROVERSY	107
13. AGREEMENT—CONTRADICTION	109
14. PARTICULAR SCIENCES (History — Mythology — Chronology—Geography—Mathematics—Natural Science—Astronomy)	110
15. ART IN GENERAL	114
16. POETRY—MUSIC—PAINTING—SCULPTURE	115
17. THE DRAMA	117

VIII. SPEECH AND WRITING—

1. SPEECH IN GENERAL	120
2. STYLE—EXPRESSION	123
3. DELIVERY—VOICE	129
4. SUBJECT-MATTER—ARGUMENT	130
5. QUESTION—ANSWER	131
6. HUMOUR—EARNEST	132
7. LANGUAGE—USE OF LANGUAGE—TRANSLATION —GRAMMAR	133
8. SENTENCE—PERIOD—WORDS—PROVERBS—SYL- LABLES	135
9. WRITING—WRITERS—BOOKS	140
10. LETTERS	144

IX. THE EMOTIONS—

1. DISPOSITION—EMOTION IN GENERAL.	145
2. JOY—PAIN	146
3. VEXATION — CARE — EQUANIMITY — CONTENT- MENT—AFFLICTION	148
4. FEAR—TERROR—ANXIETY	149
5. COURAGE — DISCOURAGEMENT — PUSILLANIMITY —PRIDE—ARROGANCE—INSOLENCE	150
6. PRESENCE OF MIND—COMPOSURE—DESPAIR	152
7. HOPE—EXPECTATION	153
8. PITY—PARDON—WANT OF FEELING—CRUELTY	155
9. LOVE—LONGING—ADMIRATION—ENTHUSIASM	156
10. BELIEF—CONFIDENCE—LOYALTY—PROTECTION —PROMISE—VERACITY (<i>fides, fiducia</i>)	158
11. SUSPICION—PRESENTIMENT	160
12. HATRED—JEALOUSY—ENVY	161
13. DISCONTENT—ANGER—REVENGE—FURY	162

X. VIRTUES AND VICES—

1. VIRTUE—MORALITY	164
2. VICE—CRIME	165
3. DESIRE—PASSION—SELF-CONTROL	166

	PAGE
4. WRONG—INSULT—OUTRAGE—OFFENCE	168
5. VIOLENCE—AMBUSCADE—THREATS	169
6. APPEARANCE—DECEIT—FALSEHOOD—DERISION .	170
7. DUTY—INCLINATION	171
8. REASON—CONSCIENCE—REMORSE	173
9. MEASURE—STANDARD—LIMIT—MODERATION .	174
10. MORALS—IMMORALITY—PRINCIPLES—CHARACTER	175

XI. RELIGION—

1. GOD—WORSHIP	177
2. RELIGION—RELIGIOUS SCRUPLE—OATH	178
3. BELIEF—UNBELIEF—SUPERSTITION	180
4. PRAYERS—WISHES—VOWS	181
5. SACRIFICE—FESTIVAL	182
6. ORACLE—PRODIGIES—AUSPICES—PRESAGE .	183

XII. DOMESTIC LIFE—

1. THE HOUSE AND ITS DIFFERENT PARTS	185
2. DOMESTIC MATTERS—PROPERTY	187
3. HABITATION—CLOTHING	188
4. FOOD—DRINK	189
5. SUBSISTENCE IN GENERAL	190
6. EXPENDITURE—LUXURY—PRODIGALITY	191
7. HOSPITALITY	192
8. SOCIABILITY—INTERCOURSE—ISOLATION	193
9. CONVERSATION—AUDIENCE—CONFERENCE	195
10. GREETING—FAREWELL	197
11. BETROTHAL—MARRIAGE—DIVORCE	198
12. WILL—INHERITANCE	199
13. CUSTOM—USAGE	200

XIII. COMMERCE AND AGRICULTURE—

1. COMMERCE IN GENERAL—PURCHASE—PRICE .	201
2. MONEY—INTEREST—LOANS	202
3. MONEY-MATTERS—ACCOUNTS—AUDIT	204
4. RATE OF INTEREST	205
5. PROFIT—CREDIT—DEBT	206

	PAGE
6. BUILDING	208
7. AGRICULTURE—MANAGEMENT OF STOCK	208

XIV. THE STATE—

1. CONSTITUTION—ADMINISTRATION—GOVERNMENT	210
2. CIVIL RIGHTS—RANK	213
3. DIGNITY—POSITION—HONOURS—PRE-EMINENCE	215
4. PUBLIC MEETINGS—SUFFRAGE	216
5. LAWS—BILLS	217
6. POPULAR FAVOUR—INFLUENCE—UNPOPULARITY	219
7. PARTY-SPIRIT—NEUTRALITY—POLITICS—ARIS- TOCRACY—DEMOCRACY	220
8. DEMAGOGY — REVOLUTION — REBELLION — AN- ARCHY	223
9. PROSCRIPTION—CONFISCATION—BANISHMENT— AMNESTY	224
10. POWER—MONARCHY—ROYALTY	226
11. SLAVERY—FREEDOM	227
12. REVENUE—COLONIES—PROVINCES	228
13. MAGISTRACIES—	
(a) Candidature—Election	230
(b) Particular Magistracies	233
14. THE SENATE	235

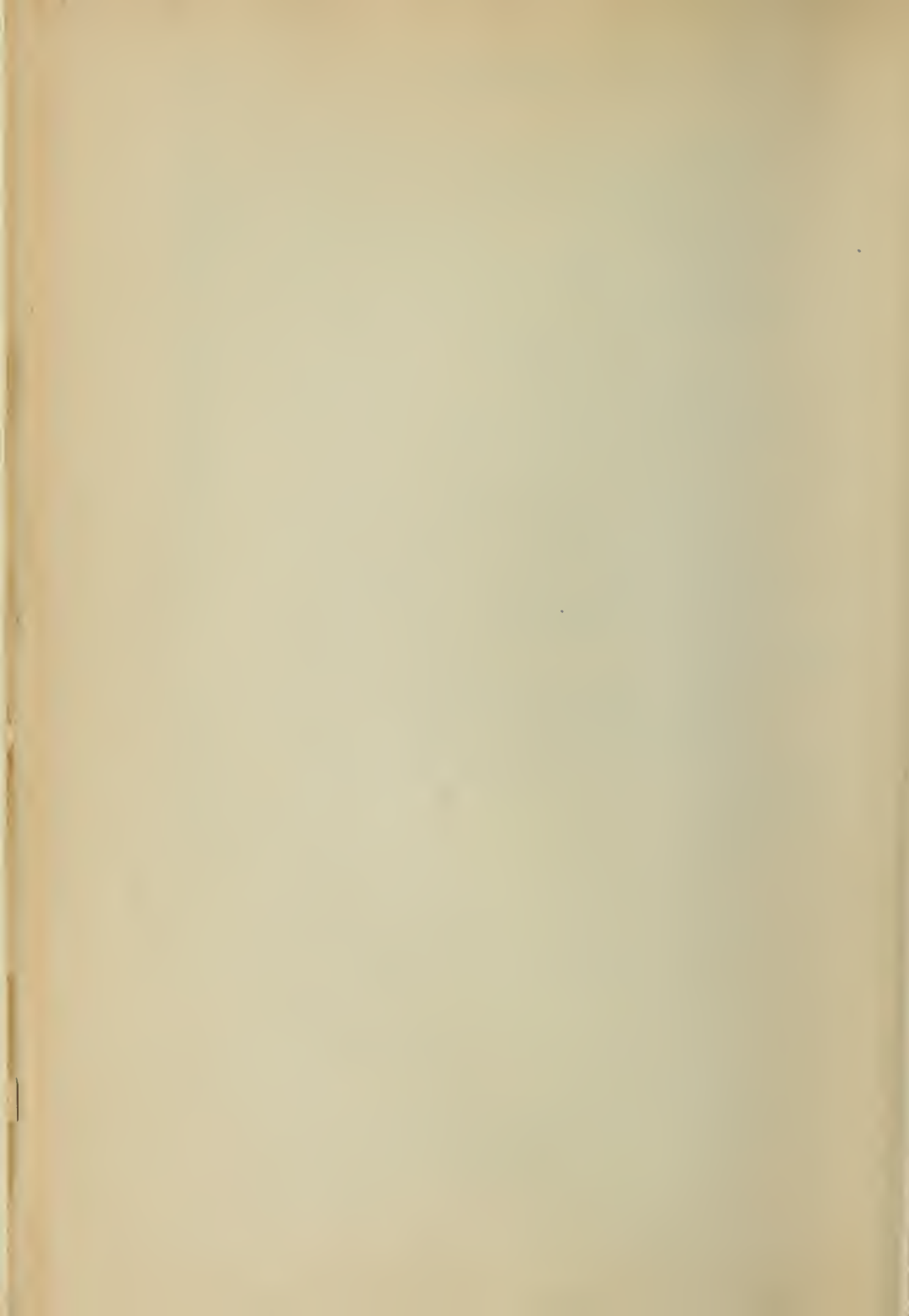
XV. LAW AND JUSTICE—

1. LAW IN GENERAL	237
2. INQUIRY—TESTIMONY—TORTURE	239
3. PROCESS—DEFENCE	240
4. ACCUSATION—VERDICT—DECISION	241
5. GUILT	243
6. PUNISHMENT—ACQUITTAL	244

XVI. WAR—

1. LEVIES—MILITARY OATH—ARMIES IN GENERAL	246
2. PAY—SERVICE—COMMISSARIAT	248
3. COMMAND—DISCIPLINE	249
4. WEAPONS	250

	PAGE
5. WAR	251
6. THE ARMY ON THE MARCH	253
7. THE CAMP	255
8. A SIEGE	257
9. BEFORE THE FIGHT	260
10. THE FIGHT—	
(a) The Fight in General	261
(b) The Attack	262
(c) Close Quarters	264
(d) Tactics—Reinforcements	264
(e) Successful Attack	265
(f) Retreat—Flight—Pursuit	266
(g) Defeat—Massacre—Wounds—Losses	267
11. VICTORY—TRIUMPH	269
12. TRUCE—PEACE—TREATIES—ALLIANCE	270
13. CONQUEST—SUBMISSION	271
XVII. SHIPPING—	
1. NAVAL AFFAIRS IN GENERAL	272
2. VOYAGE—SHIPWRECK—LANDING	273
3. A NAVAL BATTLE	275
APPENDIX	277
LATIN INDEX	283



I. THE WORLD AND NATURE

I. THE WORLD—CREATION

rerum or *mundi universitas*—the universe.

rerum natura or simply *natura*—creation ; nature.

haec omnia, quae videmus—the visible world.

totius mundi convenientia et consensus—the perfect harmony of the universe.

deus mundum aedificavit, fabricatus est, effecit (not *creavit*)¹—God made the world.

deus est mundi procreator (not *creator*), *aedificator, fabricator, opifex rerum*—God is the Creator of the world.

elementa ; initia or *principia rerum*—the elements.

elementa et tamquam semina rerum—the elements and first beginnings.

nutus et pondus or simply *nutus* (ῥοπή)—gravity.

¹ *Creare* is usually employed in the sense of producing, originating, causing, e.g. *similitudo creat errorem ; periculum alicui creare*. It has, however, occasionally the meaning to create, e.g. De Fin. *rerum quas creat natura*.

2. THE EARTH AND ITS SURFACE

*orbis terrae, terrarum*¹—the earth ; the globe.

(*terra*) *continens* (B. G. 5. 8. 2)—the continent.

terra (*regio*) *mediterranea*—an inland region ; the interior.

interior Asia ; interiora Asiae—the interior of Asia.

sinus urbis (Sall. Cat. 52. 35)—the heart of the city.

in ipsam or *intimam Graeciam penetrare*—to penetrate into the heart of Greece.

terra effert (more rarely *fert*,² but not *profert*) *fruges*—the earth brings forth fruit, crops.

terra fundit fruges—the earth brings forth fruit abundantly.

animata (*animalia*) *inanimaque* (not *inanimata*)—animate and inanimate nature.

ea, quae terra gignit

ea, quae e terra gignuntur

ea, quae a terra stirpibus continentur

ea quorum stirpes terra continentur

(N. D. 2. 10. 26)

arbores stirpesque, herbae stirpesque

(De Fin. 5. 11. 33)

} the vegetable kingdom.

radices agere (De Off. 2. 12. 73)—to take root.

gemmas agere—to bud, blossom.

gemmae proveniunt—the trees are budding.

arbores frondescunt—the trees are coming into leaf.

rami late diffunduntur—the twigs are shooting out, spreading.

¹ To the Romans *orbis terrarum* (more rarely *orbis terrae*) meant all those countries which made up the Roman Empire.

² *ferre* is also used metaphorically, to produce, e.g. *haec aetas perfectum oratorem tulit* (Brut. 12. 45).

montes vestiti silvis—wooded hills.

summus mons—the top of a mountain.

culmina Alpium—the summits of the Alps.

sub radicibus montis, in infimo monte, sub monte—at the foot of the mountain.

*superare Alpes, Pyrenaeum, Apenninum*¹ (both always in the sing.)—to cross the Alps, Pyrenees, Apennines.

altissimis montibus undique contineri—to be shut in on all sides by very high mountains.

prospectus est ad aliquid—one has a view over . . . ; one is able to see as far as . . .

collis leniter ab infimo acclivis (opp. *leniter a summo declivis*)—a gentle ascent.

ad extremum tumulum—on the edge of the hill.

loca edita, superiora—heights, high ground.

loca aspera et montuosa (Planc. 9. 22)—rough and hilly ground.

loca plana or simply *plana*—level country ; plains.

saxa praerupta—steep rocks.

loca inculta—uncultivated districts.

loca deserta (opp. *frequentia*)—deserts.

loca amoena, amoenitas locorum—pleasant districts ; charming surroundings.

3. WATER—RIVERS—SEA

summa aqua—the surface of the water.

ex aqua exstare—to stand out of the water.

aqua est umbilico tēnus—the water reaches to the waist.

aqua pectus aequat, superat—the water is up to, is above, the chest.

¹ But *Pyrenaei montes, saltus occur* (B. G. I. I. 7 ; B. C. I. 37. I).

(*se*) *ex aqua emergere*¹—to come to the surface.

aquam ex flumine derivare—to draw off water from a river.

aquam ducere per hortum—to bring a stream of water through the garden.

aquae ductus (plur. *aquarum ductus*)²—a conduit; an aqueduct.

agros irrigare—to irrigate fields.

aqua viva, profluens (opp. *stagnum*)—running water.

aqua iugis, perennis—a perpetual spring.

frigidā, calidā lavari (Plin. Ep. 3. 5. 11)—to take a cold, warm, bath.

aquae, aquarum inops—ill-watered.

fluctuare or *fluctuari*—driven by the waves.

fluctibus iactari—tossed hither and thither by the waves.

fluctibus (undis) obrui,³ *submergi*—to be engulfed.

gurgitibus hauriri—to be drowned in the eddies.

flumen citatum fertur—the river flows with a rapid current.

flumen imbris auctum—a river swollen by the rain.

flumen super ripas effunditur } the river is over its banks,
flumen extra ripas diffluit } is in flood.

*flumen agros inundat*⁴—the river floods the fields.

flumen vado transire—to wade across, to ford a river.

¹ Also used metaphorically, e.g. (*se*) *emergere ex malis* (Nep. Att. 11. 1) to recover from misfortune. So *emergere e fluctibus servitutis* (Harusp. Resp. 23. 48).

² *aquae ductio*=the action, process of drawing off the water; *canalis*=the water-pipe, channel, conduit.

³ So metaphorically, *aere alieno obrütum esse*, to be over head and ears in debt; *nomen alicuius obruere perpetua oblivione*, to drown a person's name in oblivion.

⁴ Inundation=*eluvio*, not *inundatio* which is post-classical.

flumine secundo—with the stream ; downstream.

flumine adverso—against the stream ; upstream.

Rhenus oritur or *profluit ex Alpibus*—the Rhine rises in the Alps.

accessus et recessus aestuum—ebb and flow (of tide).

decessus aestus—the ebb.

aestus maritimi mutuo accedentes et recedentes (N. D. 2. 53. 132)—the alternation of tides.

aestus ex alto se incitat (B. G. 3. 12)—the tide is coming in.

aestu rursus minuente—when the tide begins to go down.

mare ventorum vi agitatur et turbatur—there is a storm at sea.

mare medium or *internum*¹—the Mediterranean Sea.

4. FIRE

ignem facere, accendere—to light, make a fire.

ignem tectis inferre, subicere—to set fire to houses.

ignem concipere, comprehendere—to take fire.

ignem excitare (pro Mur. 25. 51)—to make up, stir up a fire.

ignem alere—to keep up a fire.

accendere, incendere aedificia—to set buildings on fire.

inflammare urbem—to set fire to a city.

flammis corripi—to be devoured by the flames.

incendio flagrare, or simply *conflagrare, ardere* (Liv. 30. 7)
—to be on fire, in flames.

incendio deleri, absūmi—to be burned to ashes.

igni cremari, necari—to perish in the flames.

¹ The Romans called it *mare nostrum* (B. G. 5. 1). Similarly *mare Oceanus* (B. G. 3. 7), the Atlantic ; *mare superum*, the Adriatic (Att. 8. 16. 1) ; *mare inferum*, the Etruscan Sea (Att. 8. 3. 5).

ignem conclamare—to raise an alarm of fire.

ventus ignem distulit (B. G. 5. 43)—the wind spread the conflagration.

5. AIR—SKY—CLIMATE—HEAVENLY BODIES

aër terrae circumiectus or *circumfusus* } the atmosphere.

aër qui est terrae proximus }
*susplicere*¹ (*in*) *caelum* } to raise the eyes to heaven ;
oculos tollere, attollere ad }
caelum } to look up to the sky.

sub divo—in the open air.

orbis finiens (Div. 2. 44. 92)—the horizon.

caelum or *natura caeli*—climate.

caelum salubre, salubritas caeli (opp. *grave, gravitas*)—healthy climate.

caeli temperatio }
aër calore et frigore temperatus } temperate climate.

caeli asperitas—rough climate.

caeli varietas—variable climate.

caelestia—(1) the heavenly bodies, (2) celestial phenomena.

sol oritur, occidit—the sun rises, sets.

ortus, occasus solis—sunrise ; sunset.

*sol*² (*luna*) *deficit, obscuratur*—the sun, moon, is eclipsed.

solis defectio—an eclipse of the sun.

luna crescit ; decrescit, senescit—the moon waxes, wanes.

¹ *susplicere* is also used figuratively, to look up to, esteem, honour, e.g. *viros, honores*. Similarly *despicere*.

² For an account of an eclipse *vid.* Liv. 44. 37.

motus stellarum constantes et rāti—the regular courses of the stars.

cursum conficere in caelo—to run its course in the sky.

caelum astris distinctum et ornatum—the star-lit sky; the firmament.

nox sideribus illustris—a star-light night.

stellae errantes, vagae—the planets.

stellae inerrantes (N. D. 2.)
 21. 54) } the fixed stars.

sidera certis locis infixā

orbis lacteus—the milky way.

orbis signifer—the zodiac.

vertex caeli, axis caeli, cardo caeli—the pole.

orbis, pars (terrae), cingulus—a zone.

orbis medius—the temperate zone.

6. NATURAL PHENOMENA

vocis imago, or simply *imago*¹—an echo.

saxa voci respondent or *resōnant*—the rocks re-echo.

ventus remittit (opp. *increbrescit*)—the wind is falling.

ventus cadit, cessat—the wind dies down, ceases.

ventis secundis, adversis uti—to have favourable, contrary, winds.

ventus se vertit in Africum—the wind is turning to the south-west.

tempestas cooritur—a storm is rising.

imber tenet (Liv. 23. 44. 6)—the rain continues.

imbres repente effusi—a sudden shower.

tempestatem idoneam, bonam nancisci—to meet with good weather.

¹ Also metaphorically, e.g. *gloria virtuti resonat tamquam imago* (Tusc. 3. 3), glory is as it were the echo of virtue.

calor se frangit (opp. *increscit*)—the heat is abating.

sol ardet, urit—the sun burns, scorches.

ardore solis torreri—to be dried up by the sun's heat.

tanta vis frigoris insecuta est, ut—the frost set in so severely that . . .

frigore (gelu) rigere, torpere—to be numb with cold.

frigore confici—to freeze to death.

aestus et frigoris patientem esse—to be able to bear heat and cold.

tempestas cum magno fragore (caeli) tonitribusque (Liv. 1. 16)—a storm accompanied by heavy claps of thunder.

caelum tonitru contremit—the heavens are shaken by the thunder.

*fulmina*¹ *micant*—the lightning flashes.

fulmen locum tetigit—the lightning has struck somewhere.

fulmine tangi, ici
de caelo tangi, percūti } to be struck by lightning.

fulmine ictus—struck by lightning.

eruptiones ignium Aetnaeorum—an eruption of Etna.

Vesuvius evomit (more strongly *eructat*) *ignes*—Vesuvius is discharging flame.

venti ab ortu solis flant—the east winds are blowing.

¹ Used sometimes figuratively, e.g. *fulmen verborum*, *fulmina eloquentiae*, *fulmina fortunae* (Tusc. 2. 27), *fulmina imperii* (Balb.

15. 34).

II. SPACE AND TIME

I. POINTS OF THE COMPASS—SITUATION

*spectare in (vergere ad) orientem (solem), occidentem*¹ (*solem*),
ad meridiem, in septentriones—to lie to the east,
 west, south, north.

spectare inter occasum solis et septentriones—to be situate
 to the north-west.

Germania quae or *Germaniae ea pars quae, ad orientem,*
occidentem vergit—eastern, western Germany.

est a septentrionibus collis—a hill lies to the north.

situs loci—the situation of a place.

natura loci—the natural position of a place.

opportunitas loci (B. G. 3. 14)—the advantageous situation
 of a place.

opportuno loco situm or *positum esse*—to be favourably
 situated.

urbs situ ad aspectum praeclara est—the city is very beauti-
 fully situated.

oppidum mari adiacet—the town lies near the sea.

villa tangit viam—the country-house stands near the road.

oppidum colli impositum est—the town stands on rising
 ground.

oppidum monti subiectum est—the town lies at the foot of
 a mountain.

promunturium in mare procurrit—a promontory juts out
 into the sea.

¹ “The east” and “the west” = *orientis, occidentis (solis) terrae, partes, regiones, gentes*. The adjectives *orientalis, occidentalis* are not used in good Latin. The north, i.e. northern countries, is represented by *terrae septentrionibus subiectae*; the south by *terra australis*.

paeninsula in mare excurrit, procurrit—a peninsula projects into the sea.

promunturium superare—to double a cape.

urbs in sinu sita est—the city is situate on a bay.

2. BOUNDARY—TERRITORY—DISTANCE

tangere, attingere terram } to be contiguous, adjacent
*finitimum*¹ *esse terrae* } to a country.

continentem esse terrae or *cum terra* (Fam. 15. 2. 2)—
 to have the same boundaries; to be coterminous.

Gallia Rhodano continetur (*vid.* p. 46, note)—Gaul is
 bounded by the Rhine.

Rhodanus Sequānos ab Helvetiis dividit—the Rhine is the
 frontier between the Helvetii and the Sequani.

fines (imperii) propagare, extendere, (longius) proferre—to
 enlarge the boundaries of a kingdom.

(*ex*) *finibus excedere*—to evacuate territory.

in Sequanis—in the country of the Sequani.

in Sequanos proficisci—to invade the territory of the
 Sequani.

porrigi ad septentriones—to stretch northwards.

haec gens pertinet usque ad Rhenum—the territory of this
 race extends as far as the Rhine.

in latitudinem, in longitudinem patere—to extend in
 breadth, in length.

*late patere*² (also metaphorically *vid.* p. 138)—to have a
 wide extent.

¹ *vicinum esse*, to be neighbouring; used of houses, gardens, etc.

² *patere* denotes extension in its widest sense; *pertinere*, extension from one point to another, e.g. *ars et late patet et ad multos pertinet* (De Or. 1. 55. 235); *ex eo oppido pars ad Helvetios pertinet* (B. G. 1. 6. 3).

imperium orbis terrarum terminis definitur—the empire reaches to the ends of the world.

longe, procul abesse ab urbe—to be far from town.

prope (propius, proxime) abesse—to be not far away.

paribus intervallis distare—to be equidistant.

tantundem viae est—the road is the same length.

longo spatio, intervallo interiecto—at a great distance.

intervallo locorum et temporum disiunctum esse—to be separated by an immense interval of space and time.

a mille passibus—a mile away.

e longinquo—from a distance.

loca longinqua—distant places.

ultimae terrae } the most distant countries, the
extremae terrae partes } world's end.

longinquae nationes—distant nations.

3. ROAD—TRAVEL

viam sternere (silice, saxo)—to pave a road.

substruere viam glarea (Liv. 41. 27)—to make a gravel path.

via strata—a street, a made road.

*via trita*¹—a well-trodden, much-frequented way.

*viam munire*²—to make a road.

viam patefacere, aperire—to open a route.

ferro viam facere (per confertos hostes)—to cut one's way (through the enemies' ranks).

viam intercludere } to obstruct a road ; to close a route.
iter obstruere }

¹ *tritus* is also used figuratively, e.g. *proverbium (sermone) tritum* (De Off. 1. 10. 33), *vocabulum latino sermone non tritum* (Acad. 1. 7. 27).

² Cf. in metaphorical sense, *viam ad honores alicui munire* (Mur. 10. 23).

via fert, ducit aliquo—a road leads somewhere.

in viam se dare
viae se committere } to set out on a journey.

viam ingredi, inire (also metaphorically)—to enter upon a route ; to take a road.

rectā (viā)—straight on.

de via declinare, deflectere (also metaphorically)—to turn aside from the right way ; to deviate.

(de via) decedere alicui—make way for any one.

Appia via proficisci—to set out by the Appian road.

erranti viam monstrare—to direct a person who has lost his way.

errores Ulixis—the wanderings of Ulysses.

viam persequi (also metaphorically)—to continue one's journey, pursue one's course.

longam viam conficere—to accomplish a long journey.

fessus de via—weary with travelling ; way-worn.

Hercules¹ in trivio, in bivio, in compitis—Hercules at the cross-roads, between virtue and vice.

iter facere—(1) to take a journey, (2) to make, lay down a road (rare).

una iter facere—to travel together.

iter ingredi (pedibus, equo, terra)—to begin a journey (on foot, on horseback, by land).

iter aliquo dirigere, intendere
tendere aliquo } to journey towards a place.

longum itineris spatium emetiri—to finish a very long journey.

ex itinere redire²—to return from a journey.

¹ *vid.* on this subject De Off. 1. 32. 118 ; Fam. 5. 12. 3.

² *reverti* means properly to turn back and retrace one's steps, after giving up one's intention of remaining longer in a place, or continu-

*in itinere*¹—on a journey ; by the way.

iter terrestre, pedestre—travel by land, on foot.

itineraria diurna nocturna—travelling day and night.

iter unius diei or simply *diei*—a day's journey.

iter impeditum—an impassable road.

disiunctissimas ultimas terras peragrarē (not *permigrare*)
—to travel through the most remote countries.

peregrinatio—a foreign journey.

peregrinari, peregre esse—to be travelling abroad.

peregre proficisci—to go abroad.

aliquem proficiscentem prosequi—to accompany any one
when starting ; to see a person off.

aliquem proficiscentem votis ominibusque prosequi (*vid. p.*
88, note)—to wish any one a prosperous journey.

rus excurrere—to make a pleasure-trip into the country.

ruri vivere, rusticari—to live in the country.

vita rustica—country life (the life of resident farmers, etc.)

rusticatio, vita rusticana—country life (of casual, temporary
visitors).

4. COMING—GOING

pedibus ire—to go on foot.

discedere a, de, ex loco aliquo }
*egredi loco ;*² *excedere ex loco* } to leave a place.

ing one's journey, cf. Div. 1. 15. 27, *itaque revertit ex itinere, cum iam progressus esset multorum dierum viam*. Similarly *reditus* = return, *reversio* generally = turning back. Cicero only uses *revenire* in conjunction with *domum*.

¹ *ex itinere* implies that the march was interrupted, thus there is a difference between *in itinere aliquem aggredi* and *ex itinere*, etc. In the same way distinguish *in fuga* and *ex fuga*, e.g. *ex fuga evadere, ex fuga dissipati*.

² *relinquere*, e.g. *domum*, properly means to give up, renounce the possession or enjoyment of a place.

*decedere loco, de, ex loco*¹—to quit a place for ever.

ingredi, intrare urbem, introire in urbem—to enter a city.

portâ ingredi, exire—to go in at, go out of a gate.

extra portam egredi—to go outside the gate.

commeare ad aliquem—to go in and out of any one's house ; to visit frequently.

Romam venire, pervenire—to come to Rome.

adventus Romam, in urbem—arrival in Rome, in town.

in unum locum convenire, confluere—to collect together at one spot.

Romam concurrere (Mil. 15. 39)—to stream towards Rome.

obviam ire alicui—to meet any one.

obviam venire alicui—to go to meet some one.

obvium or *obviam esse, obviam fieri*—to meet some one by chance.

incidere in aliquem } to meet, come across a per-
offendere, nancisci aliquem } son ; to meet casually.

obviam alicui aliquem mittere—to send to meet a person.

5. RIDING—DRIVING

curru vehi, in rheda (Mil. 21. 55)—to drive.

equo vehi—to ride.

sternere equum—to saddle a horse.

conscendere equum } to mount.
ascendere in equum }

¹ Cf. especially *decedere (ex, de) provincia*, used regularly of a magistrate leaving his province on expiry of his term of office. Similarly, where life is compared to a province, *decedere (de) vita*, or merely *decedere* = to quit this life, die (cf. De Sen. 20. 73).

descendere ex equo—to dismount.

in equo sedere ; *equo insidēre*—to be on horseback.

(*in*) *equo haerere*—to sit a horse well ; to have a good seat.

calcaria subdere equo
calcaribus equum concitare } to put spurs to a horse.

equo citato or *admisso*—at full gallop.

freno remisso ; *effusis habenis*—with loose reins.

equum in aliquem concitare—ride against any one at full speed ; charge a person.

habras adducere—to tighten the reins.

habras permittere—to slacken the reins.

admittere, permittere equum
*frenos*¹ *dare equo* } to give a horse the reins.

agitare equum—to make a horse prance.

moderari equum—to manage a horse.

equi consternantur—the horses are panic-stricken, run away.

equos incitatos sustinere—to bring horses to the halt when at full gallop.

6. WALKING—FOOTSTEPS—DIRECTION

gradum facere—to take a step.

gradum addere (sc. *gradu*) (Liv. 26. 9)—to increase one's pace.

suspensio gradu—on tiptoe.

gradum sensim referre—to retreat step by step.

¹ Cf. *frenos, calcaria alicui adhibere*, used metaphorically.

vestigia alicuius sequi, per-
sequi, or vestigiis aliquem
sequi, persequi
vestigiis alicuius insistere,
ingredi (also metaph.)

} to follow in any one's steps.

loco or vestigio se non movere—not to stir from one's place.

recta (regione, via) ; in directum—in a straight line.

in obliquum—in an oblique direction ; sideways.

obliquo monte decurrere—to run obliquely down the hill.

in contrarium ; in contrarias partes—in an opposite direction.

in transversum, e transverso—across ; transversely.

quoquo versus ; in omnes partes—in all directions.

in diversas partes or simply *diversi abeunt, discedunt*—they disperse in different directions.

huc (et) illuc—hither and thither.

ultra citroque—on this side and on that ; to and fro.

longe lateque, passim (e.g. *fluere*)—far and wide ; on all sides ; everywhere.

7. MOVEMENT IN GENERAL

se conferre in aliquem locum
petere locum

} to go to a place.

quo tendis ?—where are you going ?

sublimem or *sublime* (not *in sublime* or *sublimiter*) *ferri, abire*—to fly aloft ; to be carried into the sky.

praecipitem ire ; in praeceps deferri—to fall down headlong.

in profundum deici—to fall down into the abyss.

se deicere de muro—to throw oneself from the ramparts.

deicere aliquem de saxo Tarpeio—to throw some one down the Tarpeian rock.

*Nilus praecipitat*¹ *ex altissimis montibus*—the Nile rushes down from very high mountains.

se proripere ex domo—to rush out of the house.

humī procumbere—to fall on the ground.

humī prosternere aliquem—to throw any one to the ground.

in terram cadere, decidere—to fall to the earth.

in terram demergi—to sink into the earth.

appropinquare urbi, rarely *ad urbem*—to draw near to a city.

propius accedere ad urbem or *urbem*—to advance nearer to the city.

longius progredi, procedere—to march further forward.

Romam versus proficisci—to advance in the direction of Rome.

ad Romam proficisci—to set out for Rome.

properat, maturat proficisci—he starts in all haste, precipitately.

consequi, assequi aliquem—to catch some one up.

praecurrere aliquem (celeritate) } to overtake and pass
post se relinquere aliquem } some one.

multitudo circumfunditur alicui—a crowd throngs around some one.

per totum corpus diffundi—to spread over the whole body.

8. TIME IN GENERAL

tempus praeterit, transit—time passes.

tempus habere alicui rei—to have time for a thing.

¹ *praecipitare* is also transitive, e.g. *praecipitare aliquem*, to hurl a person down ; *ruere* always intransitive except in poetry.

tempus mihi deest ad aliquid faciendum—I have no time to do something.

tempus consumere in aliqua re—to pass one's time in doing something.

tempus terere, conterere (in) aliqua re—to waste time on something.

tempus conferre ad aliquid—to employ one's time in . . .

tempus tribuere alicui rei—to devote time to anything.

tempus non amittere, perdere—to lose no time.

nullum tempus intermittere, quin (also *ab opere*, or *ad opus*)
—to devote every spare moment to . . . ; to work without intermission at a thing.

tempus ducere—to spend time.

aliquid in aliud tempus, in posterum differre—to put off till another time ; to postpone.

nihil mihi longius est or *videtur quam dum* or *quam ut*—I cannot wait till . . .

nihil mihi longius est quam (c. Inf.)—nothing is more tiresome to me than . . .

tempus (spatium) deliberandi or *ad deliberandum postulare, dare, sibi sumere*—to require, give, take time for deliberation.

paucorum dierum spatium ad deliberandum dare—to give some one a few days for reflection.

tempori servire,¹ *cedere*—to accommodate oneself to circumstances.

ex quo tempore or simply *ex quo*—since the time that, since (at the beginning of a sentence).

¹ The verb *servire* helps to form several phrases, e.g. *servire valetudini*, to be a valetudinarian ; *iracundiae*, to be unable to restrain one's anger ; *brevitati*, to be concise ; *communi utilitati*, to be devoted to the public good, etc.

eo ipso tempore, cum ; tum ipsum, cum—at the same moment that, precisely when.

incidunt tempora, cum—occasions arise for . . .

tempus (ita) fert (not *secum*)—circumstances demand.

tempus maximum est, ut—it is high time that . . .

haec tempora, nostra haec aetas, memoria—the present day.

his temporibus, nostra (hac) aetate, nostra memoria, his (not *nostris*) *diebus*—in our time ; in our days.

nostra aetas multas victorias vidit—our generation has seen many victories.

memoria patrum nostrorum—in our fathers' time.

aetate (temporibus) Periclis—in the time of Pericles.

*antiquis*¹ *temporibus*—in old days, in the olden time.

libera re publica—in the time of the Republic.

tempora Caesariana—the imperial epoch.

media quae vocatur aetas—the middle ages.

<i>Pericles summus vir illius aetatis</i>	} Pericles, the greatest man of his day.
<i>Pericles, quo nemo tum fuit clarior</i>	
<i>Pericles, vir omnium, qui tum</i>	
<i>fuerunt, clarissimus</i>	

vir ut temporibus illis doctus—a man of considerable learning for those times.

tempore progrediente—in process of time.

primo quoque tempore—at the first opportunity.

hoc tempore—at this moment.

puncto temporis—in an instant.

¹ *antiquitas* = the state of affairs in times gone by, not a division of time ; so *antiquitatis studia*, archaeology ; *veteres* or *antiqui poetae, populi*, the poets, people of antiquity ; *antiqua monumenta*, the relics of antiquity. *antiquitates* plur. is used for the institutions, usages of times gone by.

*momento*¹ *temporis*—at the important moment.

in ipso discrimine (articulo) temporis—just at the critical moment.

temporis causa—on the spur of the moment.

*ad tempus*² *adesse*—to be there at a given time.

ad exiguum tempus
brevis or *exigui temporis* } for a short time.

satis longo intervallo—after a fairly long interval.

spatio temporis intermisso—after some time.

in praesentia, in praesens (tempus)—at present ; for the moment.

in posterum ; in futurum—for the future.

in perpetuum—for ever.

semel atque iterum ; iterum ac saepius ; identidem ; etiam atque etiam—more than once ; repeatedly.

futura providere (not *praevidere*)—to foresee the future.

futura or *casus futuros (multo ante) prospicere*—to foresee the far distant future.

futura non cogitare, curare—to take no thought for the future.

*saeculi*³ *consuetudo* or *ratio atque inclinatio temporis (temporum)*—the spirit of the times, the fashion.

his moribus—according to the present custom, fashion.

¹ *momentum* (i.e. *movimentum*) is properly that which sets in motion, which gives a decisive impulse to things, cf. Luc. iv. 819 *momentumque fuit mutatus Curio rerum*. Livy and later writers employ the word in the sense of a moment of time.

² *ad tempus* also means (1) according to the circumstances of the case, e.g. *ad tempus consilium capere*, (2) for a short time, temporarily.

³ The *spirit* of a thing is usually rendered by such words as *natura, proprietas, ratio atque voluntas*, e.g. the spirit, genius of a language, *natura* or *proprietas sermonis* ; the spirit of the laws, *voluntas et sententia legum*.

9. YEAR—SEASONS

praeterito anno (not *praeterlapso*)—in the past year.

superiore, priore anno—last year.

proximo anno—(1) last year, (2) next year.

insequent(e) anno (not *sequente*)—in the following year.

*anno*¹ *peracto, circumacto, interiecto, intermisso*—after a year has elapsed.

anno vertente—in the course of the year.

initio anni, ineunte anno—at the beginning of the year.

exeunte, extremo anno—at the end of the year.

singulis annis, diebus—year by year; day by day.

quinto quoque anno—every fifth year.

ad annum—a year from now.

amplius sunt (quam) viginti anni or *viginti annis*—it is more than twenty years ago.

viginti anni et amplius, aut plus—twenty years and more.

abhinc (ante) viginti annos or *viginti his annis*—twenty years ago.

quinque anni sunt or *sextus annus est, cum te non vidi*—I have not seen you for five years.

quinque annos or *sextum (iam) annum abest*—he has been absent five years.

anno ab urbe condita quinto—in the fifth year from the founding of the city.

commutationes temporum quadripartitae—the succession of the four seasons.

verno, aestivo, auctumnali, hiberno tempore—in spring, summer, autumn, winter time.

ineunte, primo vere—at the beginning of spring.

¹ Unless *one* is emphasised *unus* is left out with the following words: *annus, mensis, dies, hora, and verbum*.

ver appetit—spring is approaching.

suavitas verni temporis—the charms of spring.

summa aestate, hieme—in the height of summer, depth of winter.

hiems subest—winter is at hand.

hiemem tolerare—to bear the winter.

anni descriptio—the division of the year (into months, etc.)

annus (mensis, dies) intercalaris—the intercalary year (month, day).

fasti—the calendar (list of fasts and festivals).

10. DAY—DIVISIONS OF THE DAY

ante lucem—before daybreak.

prima luce—at daybreak.

luce (luci)—in full daylight.

ubi illuxit, luxit, diluxit—when it was day.

lucet—it is daylight.

diluculo—in the morning twilight.

advesperascit—evening is drawing on.

die, caelo vesperascente—when it is growing dusk ; towards evening.

multus dies or *multa lux est*—the day is already far advanced.

ad multam noctem—till late at night.

de nocte, de die—while it is still night, day.

multa de nocte—late at night.

intempesta, concubia nocte—in the dead of night ; at midnight.

silentio noctis—in the silence of the night.

vicissitudines dierum noctiumque—the succession of day and night.

noctes diesque, noctes et dies, et dies et noctes, dies noctesque, diem noctemque—night and day.

tempus matutinum, meridianum, vespertinum, nocturnum,
—morning, noon, evening, night.

tempora matutina—the morning hours.

in dies (singulos)—from day to day.

in diem vivere—to live from day to day.

alternis diebus—every other day.

quattuor dies continui—four successive days.

unus et alter dies—one or two days.

dies unus, alter, plures intercesserant—one, two, several days had passed, intervened.

diem proferre (Att. 13. 14)—to adjourn, delay.

*biduo serius*¹—two days late.

horā citius—an hour too soon.

postridie qui fuit dies Non. Sept. (Nonarum Septembrium)
(Att. 4. 1. 5)—on the day after, which was September 5th.

hodie qui est dies Non. Sept. ; cras qui dies futurus est Non. Sept.—to-day the 5th of September ; to-morrow September the 5th.

dies hesternus, hodiernus, crastinus—yesterday, to-day, to-morrow.

diem dicere colloquio—to appoint a date for an interview.

ad diem constitutam—at the appointed time.

diem videre, cum . . .—to live to see the day when . . .

dies dolorem mitigabit—time will assuage his grief.

quota hora est?—what time is it?

tertia hora est—it is the third hour (= 9 A.M.)

ad horam compositam—at the time agreed on.

¹ Used absolutely “too late” = *sero* ; if “too late for,” “later than,” always *serius* (*quam*).

III. PARTS OF THE HUMAN BODY

- omnibus artubus contremiscere*—to tremble in every limb.
- aures claudere, patefacere* (e.g. *veritati, assentatoribus*)—to turn a deaf ear to, to open one's ears to . . .
- aures praeberē alicui*—to listen to a person.
- aures alicuius obtundere* or simply *obtundere* (*aliquem*)—to din a thing into a person's ears.
- in aurem alicui dicere* (*insusurrare*) *aliquid*—to whisper something in a person's ear.
- ad aures alicuius* (not *alicui*) *pervenire, accidere*—to come to some one's ears.
- aures erigere*—to prick up one's ears.
- oratio in aures influit*—his words find an easy hearing, are listened to with pleasure.
- aures elegantes, terētes, tritae* (De Or. 9. 27)—a fine, practised ear.
- neque auribus neque oculis satis consto*—I am losing my eyesight and getting deaf.
- caput aperire* (opp. *operire*)—to uncover one's head.
- capite aperto* (opp. *operto*)—bare-headed.
- capite obvoluto*—with head covered.
- caput demittere*—to bow one's head.
- caput praecidere*—to cut off a man's head.
- caput*¹ *parieti impingere*—to strike one's head against the wall.

¹ *caput* has several metaphorical meanings, e.g. *capita coniurationis* (Liv. 9. 26), the leaders of the conspiracy; *caput Graeciae*, the capital of Greece; *caput cenae*, the chief dish; *capita legis*, the headings, clauses of a law; *id quod caput est*, the main point; *de capite deducere* (Liv. 6. 15), to subtract from the capital; *capitis periculum*,

cervices (in Cic. only in plur.) *frangere alicui* or *alicuius*—
to break a person's neck.

gladius cervicibus impendet—a sword hangs over his neck.
*hostis*¹ *in cervicibus alicuius est*—the foe is at our heels, is
upon us.

promittere crinem, barbam—to grow one's hair, beard
long.

passis crinibus—with dishevelled hair.

capilli horrent—his hair stands on end.

capilli compti, compositi (opp. *horridi*)—well-ordered, well-
brushed hair.

extremis digitis aliquid attingere—to touch with the finger-
tips.

frontem contrahere (opp. *explicare*)—to frown.

frontem ferire, percutere—to beat one's brow.

in fronte alicuius inscriptum est—one can see it in his
face.

ab alicuius latere non discedere—to be always at a person's
side.

a latere regis esse—to belong to the king's bodyguard.

manum (dextram) alicui porrigere—to give one's hand to
some one.

*manum non vertere alicuius rei causa*²—to make not the
slightest effort; not to stir a finger.

mortal peril; *capitis deminutio* (*maxima, media, minima*) (Liv. 22. 60), deprivation of civil rights. *caput* is often combined with *fons* = source, origin, e.g. *ille fons et caput Socrates* (Cic. De Or. 1. 42); *in aegritudine est fons miseriarum et caput* (Cic.) By metonymy *caput* is used with *liberum* (and *noxium*) (Verr. 2. 32. 79) with the meaning of a free (guilty) person, individual.

¹ Cf. *velut in cervicibus habere hostem* (Liv. 44. 39); *bellum ingens in cervicibus est* (Liv. 22. 33. 6).

² Cf. *ne digitum quidem porrigere alicuius rei causa*.

manus inicere, inferre, afferre alicui—to lay violent hands on a person.

manus tollere—to raise one's hands in astonishment.

manus dare—to own oneself conquered, surrender.

manu ducere aliquem—to lead some one by the hand.

manu or *in manu tenere aliquid*—to hold something in one's hand.

in manibus habere aliquid (also metaphorically)—to have something in one's hands, on hand.

de manu in manus or *per manus tradere aliquid*—to pass a thing from hand to hand.

ex or *de manibus alicui* or *alicuius extorquere aliquid*—to wrest from a person's hand.

e manibus dimittere—to let go from one's hands.

in alicuius manus venire, pervenire—to come into some one's hands.

in alicuius manus incidere—to fall unexpectedly into some one's hands.

in manus(m) sumere aliquid—to take something into one's hand.

*in manibus*¹ *aliquem gestare*—to carry in one's arms.

e (de) manibus effugere,² *elābi*—to slip, escape from the hands.

inter manus auferre aliquem—to carry some one away in one's arms.

¹ Notice too *liberos de parentum complexu avellere* (Verr. 2. 1. 3. 7), to snatch children from their parents' arms (not *brachium*), so *in alicuius complexu mori*; *in alicuius complexu haerere*. *medium aliquem amplecti*, to take to one's arms, embrace; *libentissimo animo accipere*, to welcome with open arms.

² Distinguish *effugere aliquid*, to escape the touch of, e.g. *invidiam, mortem*; and *effugere ex aliqua re*, to escape from a position one is already in, e.g. *e carcere, e caede, e praelio*. Notice *fugit me*, it escapes my notice.

compressis manibus sedere (proverb.) (Liv. 7. 13)—to sit with folded arms; to be inactive.

mordicus tenere aliquid—to hold fast in the teeth (also metaphorically, obstinately).

oculos conicere in aliquem—to turn one's gaze on; to regard.

oculos circumferre—to look in every direction.

in omnes partes aciem (oculorum) intendere—to gaze intently all around.

omnium oculos (et ora) ad se convertere—to draw every one's eyes upon one.

omnium animos or mentes in se convertere—to attract universal attention.

conspici, conspicuum esse aliqua re—to make oneself conspicuous.

oculos (aures, animum¹) advertere ad aliquid—to turn one's eyes (ears, attention) towards an object.

oculi in vultu alicuius habitant—his eyes are always fixed on some one's face.

oculos figere in terra and *in terram*—to keep one's eyes on the ground.

oculos pascere aliqua re (also simply *pasci aliqua re*)—to feast one's eyes with the sight of . . .

oculos deicere, remove ab aliqua re—to turn one's gaze away from an object.

oculos operire (morienti)²—to close the eyes of a dying person.

oculorum aciem alicui praestringere (also simply *praestringere*)—to dazzle a person.

oculos, lumina amittere—to lose one's sight.

¹ *animum advertere aliquid* = *animadvertere aliquid* = to notice a thing; *animadvertere in aliquem* = to punish a person.

² To shut one's eyes to a thing, *conicere in aliqua re*.

oculis privare aliquem }
luminibus orbare aliquem } to deprive a person of his eyes.

*oculis captum esse*¹ (*vid.* p. 36, note)—to be blind.

ante oculos aliquid versatur—something presents itself to my vision.

oculis, ante oculos (animo) proponere aliquid—to picture a thing to oneself; to imagine.

ante oculos vestros (not vobis) res gestas proponite—picture to yourselves the circumstances.

cernere et videre aliquid—to see clearly, distinctly.

oculis mentis videre aliquid—to see with the mind's eye.

in oculis aliquem ferre }
aliquis est mihi in oculis } to cherish as the apple of one's eye.

abire ex oculis, e conspectu alicuius—to go out of sight, disappear.

venire in conspectum alicuius—to come in sight.

se in conspectum dare alicui—to show oneself to some one.

fugere alicuius conspectum, aspectum—to keep out of a person's sight.

in conspectu omnium or *omnibus inspectantibus*—before every one, in the sight of the world.

omnia uno aspectu, conspectu intueri—to take in everything at a glance.

non apparere—to have disappeared.

pedibus obterere, conculcare—to trample under foot.

ad pedes alicuius accidere—to fall at some one's feet.

ad pedes alicuius se proicere, se abicere, procumbere, se prosternere—to throw oneself at some one's feet.

ad pedes alicuius iacere, stratum esse (stratum iacere)—to prostrate oneself before a person.

¹ Cf. *caecatus, occaecatus cupiditate, stultitia*.

quod ante pedes est or *positum est, non videre*—to fail to see what lies before one.

sanguine manare, redundare—to drip blood ; to be deluged with blood.

vultum fingere—to dissemble, disguise one's feelings.

vultus ficti simulatique—a feigned expression.

vultum componere ad severitatem—to put on a stern air.

vultum non mutare—to keep one's countenance, remain impassive.

IV. PROPERTIES OF THE HUMAN BODY

1. FEELINGS—SENSATIONS—POWERS

sensus sani, integri, incorrupti—sound, unimpaired senses.

sensibus praeditum esse—to be endowed with sense.

sensu audiendi carere—not to possess the sense of hearing.

<i>sub sensum</i> or <i>sub oculos, sub aspectum</i>	} to come within the sphere of the senses.
<i>cadere</i>	
<i>sensibus</i> or <i>sub sensus subiectum esse</i>	

sensibus percipi—to be perceptible to the senses.

<i>res sensibus</i> or <i>oculis subiectae</i>	} the world of sense, the visible world.
(De Fin. 5. 12. 36)	
<i>res quas oculis cernimus</i>	
<i>res externae</i>	

sensus movere (more strongly *pellere*)—to make an impression on the senses.

<i>aliquid sensus suaviter afficit</i>	} a thing makes a pleasant impression on the senses.
<i>aliquid sensus incunditate</i>	
<i>perfundit</i>	

pulsu externo, adventicio agitari—to be affected by some external impulse, by external impressions.

sevocare mentem a sensibus (De Nat. D. 3. 8. 21)—to free one's mind from the influences of the senses.

aliquid a sensibus meis abhorret—something offends my instincts, goes against the grain.

vires corporis or merely *vires*—bodily strength.

vires colligere—to gain strength.

vires aliquem deficiunt—to lose strength.

dum vires suppetunt—as long as one's strength holds out.

bonis esse viribus—to be robust, vigorous.

pro viribus or *pro mea parte* } as well as I can ; to the
*pro virili parte*¹ (cf. p. 70) } best of my ability.

2. BIRTH—LIFE

in lucem edi—to see the light, come into the world.

ei, propter quos hanc lucem aspeximus—those to whom we owe our being.

*tollere*² or *suscipere liberos*—to accept as one's own child ; to make oneself responsible for its nurture and education.

aliquem in liberorum loco habere—to treat as one's own child.

sexus (not *genus*) *virilis, muliebris*—the male, female sex.
patre, (e) matre natus—son of such and such a father, mother.

Cato Uticensis ortus erat a Catone Censorio—Cato of Utica was a direct descendant of Cato the Censor.

¹ *pro virili parte* is distinct from the other expressions, as implying more assurance and confidence on the part of the speaker.

² It was the custom for a Roman father to lift up his new-born child, which was laid on the ground at his feet ; hence the expression *tollere, suscipere*.

originem ab aliquo trahere, ducere—to trace one's descent from some one.

Romae natus, (a) Roma oriundus—a native of Rome.

cuius es?—what country do you come from?

natione, genere Anglus—an Englishman by birth.

ortus ab Anglis or *oriundus ex Anglis*—a native of England.

urbs patria or simply *patria*—native place.

animam, spiritum ducere—to breathe, live.

aëra spiritu ducere—to breathe the air.

animam continere—to hold one's breath.

cursu exanimari (B. G. 2. 23. 1)—to run till one is out of breath.

spiritum intercludere alicui—to suffocate a person.

in vita esse—to be alive.

vita or *hac luce frui*—to enjoy the privilege of living; to be alive.

vitam beatam (miseram) degere—to live a happy (unhappy) life.

vitam, aetatem (omnem aetatem, omne aetatis tempus) agere (honeste, ruri, in litteris), degere, traducere—to live (all) one's life (honourably, in the country, as a man of learning).

dum vita suppetit; dum (quoad) vivo—as long as I live.

*si vita mihi suppetitat*¹ } if I live till then.
si vita suppetit

quod reliquum est vitae—the rest of one's life.

vitae cursum or *curriculum*² *conficere*—to finish one's career.

¹ *suppetitare* (1) transitive, to supply sufficiently; (2) intrans. to be present in sufficient quantities=*suppetere*.

² *vitae (vivendi) cursus* or *curriculum*=life, career—considering its duration, length. Life=biography is not *curriculum vitae*, but simply *vita, vitae descriptio*.

*Homerus fuit*¹ *multis annis ante Roman conditam*—Homer lived many years before the foundation of Rome.

3. TIME OF LIFE

(The terms for the different ages of man are *infans*, *puer*, *adulescens*, *iuvenis*, *senior*, *senex*, *grandis natu*.)

ea aetate, *id aetatis esse*—to be of such and such an age.

a puero (*is*), *a parvo* (*is*), *a parvulo* (*is*)—from youth up.

a teneris unguiculis (ἐξ ἀπαλῶν ὀνύχων) (Fam. 1. 6. 2)

—from one's cradle, from one's earliest childhood.

ab ineunte (*prima*) *aetate* (De Or. 1. 21. 97)—from one's entry into civil life.

ex pueris excedere—to leave one's boyhood behind one, become a man.

flos aetatis—the prime of youthful vigour.

aetate florere, *vigere* } to be in the prime of life.
integra aetate esse }

adulescentia deferbuit—the fires of youth have cooled.

aetate progrediente—with advancing years.

aetate ingravescente—with the weight, weakness of declining years.

aetas constans, *media*, *firmata*, *corroborata* (not *virilis*)—manhood.

grandior factus } having reached man's estate.
corroborata, *firmata aetate* }

sui iuris factum esse—to have become independent, be no longer a minor.

aetate provectum esse (not *aetate provecta*)—to be advanced in years.

¹ To live, speaking chronologically, is *esse*; *vivere* denotes to be alive, pass one's life, e.g. *laute*, *in otio*.

longius aetate provectum esse—to be more advanced in years.

grandis natu—aged.

aetate affecta esse—to be infirm through old age.

vires consenescent—to become old and feeble.

senectute, senio confectum esse—to be worn out by old age.

exacta aetate mori—to die at a good old age.

ad summam senectutem pervenire—to live to a very great age.

senectus nobis obrēpit—old age creeps on us insensibly.

admodum adulescens, senex—still quite a young (old) man.

extrema aetas } the last stage of life, one's last
extremum tempus aetatis } days.

vita occidens—the evening of life.

aequalem esse alicuius—to be a contemporary of a person.

maior (natu)—the elder.

aetate alicui antecedere, anteire—to be older than.

quot annos natus es? } how old are you?
qua aetate es? }

tredecim annos natus sum—I am thirteen years old.

tertium decimum annum ago—I am in my thirteenth year.

puer decem annorum—a boy ten years old.

decimum aetatis annum ingredi—to be entering on one's tenth year.

decem annos vixisse—to be ten years old.

decimum annum excessisse, egressum esse—to be more than ten years old, to have entered on one's eleventh year.

minorem esse viginti annis—to be not yet twenty.

tum habebam decem annos—I was ten years old at the time.

centum annos complere
vitam ad annum centesimum
perducere. } to reach one's hundredth
 year, to live to be a
 hundred.

accessio paucorum annorum—the addition of a few years.

tertiam iam aetatem videre—to be middle-aged (*i.e.* between thirty and forty).

in aetatem alicuius, in annum incidere—to happen during a person's life, year of office.

omnium suorum or *omnibus suis superstitem esse*—to outlive, survive all one's kin.

homines qui nunc sunt (opp.
qui tunc fuerunt) } our contemporaries; men
homines huius aetatis, nos-
trae memoriae } of our time.

posterī—posterity.

scriptores aetate posteriores or *inferiores*—later writers.

4. HUNGER—THIRST

esurire—to be hungry.

fame laborare, premi—to be tormented by hunger, to be starving.

famem tolerare, sustentare—to endure the pangs of hunger.

inediâ mori or *vitam finire*—to starve oneself to death.

fame confici, perire, interire—to die of starvation.

fame necari—to be starved to death (as punishment).

famem, sitim explere
famem sitimque depellere cibo
et potione } to allay one's hunger, thirst.

siti cruciari, premi—to suffer agonies of thirst.

sitim colligere—to become thirsty.

sitim haustu gelidae aquae sedare—to slake one's thirst by a draught of cold water.

*famis et sitis*¹ *patientem esse*—to be able to endure hunger and thirst.

5. LAUGHTER—TEARS

*risum edere, tollere*²—to begin to laugh.

cachinnum tollere, edere—to burst into a roar of laughter.

risum movere, concitare—to raise a laugh.

risum elicere (more strongly *excitere*) *alicui*—to make a person laugh.

risum captare—to try and raise a laugh.

risum tenere vix posse
risum aegre continere posse } to be scarcely able to restrain
one's laughter.

aliquid in risum vertere—to make a thing ridiculous, turn it into a joke.

lacrimas, vim lacrimarum effundere, profundere—to burst into a flood of tears.

in lacrimas effundi or *lacrimis perfundi*—to be bathed in tears.

lacrimis obortis—with tears in one's eyes.

multis cum lacrimis
magno cum fletu } with many tears.

lacrimas tenere non posse
fletum cohibere non posse
vix mihi tempero
vix me contineo } *quin lacrimem* } to be hardly able to
restrain one's tears.

¹ *sitis* is also used metaphorically—e.g. *libertatis sitis* (Rep. 1. 43. 66), so *sitire*—e.g. *honoris* (De Fin. 4. 5. 3), *libertatem* (Rep. 1. 43. 66), *sanguinem* (Phil. 2. 7. 20). The participle *sitiens* takes the Gen.—e.g. *sitiens virtutis* (Planc. 5. 13).

² Not *in risum erumpere*, which only occurs in late Latin. However, *risus, vox, fletus erumpit* is classical, similarly *indignatio* (Liv. 4. 50), *furor, cupiditates* (Cael. 12. 28).

lacrimas or *fletum alicui movere*—to move to tears.

prae lacrimis loqui non posse—to be unable to speak for emotion.

gaudio lacrimare—to weep for joy.

hinc illae lacrimae (proverb.) (Ter. And. 1. 1. 99 ; Cael. 25.

61) hence these tears ; there's the rub.

lacrimula (Planc. 31. 76) } crocodiles' tears.
lacrimae simulatae }

6. HEALTH—SICKNESS

bona (*firma, prospera*) *valetudine*¹ *esse* or *uti* (*vid.* p. 84, note)—to enjoy good health.

valetudini consulere, operam dare—to take care of one's health.

firma corporis constitutio or *affectio*—a good constitution.

infirmus, aeger valetudine esse or *uti*—to be ill, weakly.

in morbum incidit } he fell ill.
aegrotare coepit }

morbo tentari or *corripī*—to be attacked by disease.

morbo affligi—to be laid on a bed of sickness.

lecto teneri—to be confined to one's bed.

vehementer, graviter aegrotare, iacere }
gravi morbo affectum esse, confictari, } to be seriously ill.
vexari }

leviter aegrotare, minus valere—to be indisposed.

aestu et febris iactari—to have a severe attack of fever.

*omnibus membris captum esse*²—to be affected by disease in every limb ; to be paralysed.

¹ *valetudo* is a neutral term=state of health. *sanitas*=soundness of mind, reason—e.g. *ad sanitatem reverti*, to recover one's reason.

² Note *auribus, oculis, captum esse*, to be deaf, blind ; *mente captum esse*, to be mad.

ex pedibus laborare, pedibus aegrum esse—to have the gout.
pestilentia (not *pestis*) *in urbem* (*populum*) *invadit*—the
 plague breaks out in the city.

animus relinquit aliquem—a man loses his senses, becomes
 unconscious.

*morbus ingravescit*¹—the disease gets worse.

morbo absūmi (Sall. Jug. 5. 6)—to be carried off by a
 disease.

assidēre aegrotō (Liv. 25. 26)—to watch by a sick man's
 bedside.

aegrotum curare—to treat as a patient (used of a doctor).
curationes—method of treatment.

aegrotum sanare (not *curare*)—to cure a patient.

ex morbo convalescere (not *reconvalescere*)—to recover from
 a disease.

e gravi morbo recreari or *se colligere*—to recruit oneself
 after a severe illness.

melius ei factum est—he feels better.

<i>valetudinem</i> (<i>morbum</i>) <i>excusare</i> ²	} to excuse oneself on the score of health.
(Liv. 6. 22. 7)	
<i>valetudinis excusatione uti</i>	

7. SLEEP—DREAMS

cubitum ire—to go to bed.

somno or *quieti se tradere*—to lay oneself down to sleep.

somnum capere non posse—to be unable to sleep.

¹ The comparative and superlative of *aeger* and *aegrotus* are not used in this connection, they are replaced by such phrases as *vehementer*, *graviter aegrotare*, *morbus ingravescit*, etc.

² But *se excusare alicui* or *apud aliquem* (*de* or *in aliqua re*) = to excuse oneself to some one about a thing.

curae somnum mihi adimunt, dormire me non sinunt—I cannot sleep for anxiety.

somnum oculis meis non vidi (Fam. 7. 30)—I haven't had a wink of sleep.

arte, graviter dormire (ex lassitudine)—to sleep soundly (from fatigue).

artus somnus aliquem complectitur (Rep. 6. 10)—to fall fast asleep.

somno captum, oppressum esse—to be overcome by sleep.

sopitum esse—to be sound asleep.

in lucem dormire—to sleep on into the morning.

somno solvi—to awake.

(e) *somno excitare, dormientem excitare*—to rouse, wake some one.

e lecto or e cubili surgere—to rise from one's bed, get up.

per somnum, in somnis } in a dream.
per quietem, in quiete }

in somnis videre aliquid or speciem—to see something in a dream.

in somnis visus (mihi) sum videre—I dreamed I saw . . .

species mihi dormienti oblata est—I saw a vision in my dreams.

somnium verum evādit (Div. 2. 53. 108)—my dream is coming true.

somnium interpretari—to explain a dream.

somniorum interpres, coniector—an interpreter of dreams.

somniare de aliquo—to dream of a person.

8. DEATH

- (de) vita decedere* or merely *decedere*
(ex) vita excedere, ex vita abire
de vita exire, de (ex) vita migrare } to depart this life.
mortem (diem supremum) obire
supremo vitae die—on one's last day.
animam edere or *efflare*
extremum vitae spiritum edere } to give up the ghost.
animam agere—to be at one's last gasp.
mors immatura or *praematura*—an untimely death.
mature decedere—to die young.
subita morte exstingui—to be cut off by sudden death.
necessaria (opp. *voluntaria*) *morte mori*
morbo perire, absūmi, consūmi } to die a natural
*debitum naturae reddere*¹ (Nep. Reg. 1) } death.
*mortem sibi consciscere*²—to commit suicide.
se vita privare—to take one's own life.
manus, vim sibi afferre—to lay hands on oneself.
vitae finem facere—to put an end to one's life.
talem vitae exitum (not *finem*) *habuit* (Nep. Eum. 13)—
 such was the end of . . . (used of a violent
 death).
mortem oppetere—to meet death (by violence).
mortem occumbere pro patria—to die for one's country.

¹ *sua morte defungi* or *mori* is late Latin, cf. Inscr. Orell. 3453
debitum naturae persolvit.

² *se interficere, se occidere, se necare* are rare. During the classic period, when suicide was not common, *ipse* is often added—e.g. *Crassum se ipsum interemisisse* (Cic. Scaur. 2. 16), *Lucretia se ipsa interemit* (Fin. 2. 20. 66); but later, when suicide had become frequent, *se interemit*; *nonnulli semet interemerunt* (Suet. Iul. 89), etc., occur commonly.

sanguinem suum pro patria effundere or *profundere*—to shed one's blood for one's fatherland.

vitam profundere pro patria } to sacrifice oneself for
se morti offerre pro salute patriae } one's country.

dare venenum in pane—to give a person poison in bread.

venenum sumere, bibere—to take poison.

veneno sibi mortem consciscere—to poison oneself.

poculum mortis (mortiferum) exhaurire (Cluent. 11. 31)—to drain the cup of poison.

potestas vitae necisque—power over life and death.

plagam extremam or *mortiferam infligere*—to inflict a death-blow.

e or *de medio tollere*—to remove a person.

perii ! actum est de me ! (Ter. Ad. 3. 2. 26)—I'm undone !
 it's all up with me !

9. BURIAL

funere efferrī or simply *efferrī* (*publice ; publico, suo sumptu*)
 —to be interred (at the expense of the state, at one's own cost).

sepultura aliquem afficere—to bury a person.

iusta facere, solvere alicui } to perform the last rites
supremo officio in aliquem fungi } for a person.

funus alicui facere, ducere (Cluent. 9. 28)—to carry out the funeral obsequies.

funus alicuius exsequi } to attend a person's
exsequias alicuius funeris prosequi } funeral.

supremis officiis aliquem prosequi (*vid.* p. 88, note)—to perform the last offices of affection.

mortuum in sepulcro condere—to entomb a dead body.

*aliquem mortuum*¹ *cremare* (Sen. 23. 84)—to burn a corpse.
pompa funebris—a funeral procession.

funus or *exsequias celebrare*—to celebrate the obsequies.

ludos funebres alicui dare—to give funeral games in honour of a person.

*oratio funebris*²—a funeral oration.

sepulturae honore carere } to be deprived of the rites of
iustis exsequiarum carere } burial.

elogium in sepulcro incisum—the epitaph.

sepulcro (Dat.) or *in sepulcro hoc inscriptum est*—this is the inscription on his tomb . . .

hic situs est . . .—here lies . . .

aliquem in rogam imponere—to place on the funeral-pyre.

proiici inhumatum (in publicum)—to be cast out unburied.

V. HUMAN LIFE; ITS VARIOUS RELATIONS AND CONDITIONS

I. CIRCUMSTANCE—SITUATION— DIFFICULTY

res humanae or simply *res*—human life.

haec est rerum humanarum } that is the way of the world ;
condicio } such is life.

sic vita hominum est

ita (ea lege, ea condicione) nati sumus—this is our natural tendency, our destiny ; nature compels us.

¹ “ Corpse ” usually = *corpus mortui* or simply *corpus*. *cadaver* is a corpse which has begun to decompose.

² For eulogy, panegyric, use *laudatio funebris* or simply *laudatio*, cf. Mil. 13. 33 ; Liv. 5. 50.

res externas or *humanas despicere*—to despise earthly things.

res humanas infra se positas arbitrari—to feel superior to the affairs of this life.

meliore (deteriore) condicione esse, uti—to find one's circumstances altered for the better (the worse.)

condicio ac fortuna hominum infimi generis—the position of the lower classes.

res meae meliore loco, in meliore causa sunt meliorem in statum redigor } my position is considerably improved ; my prospects are brighter.

aliquem in antiquum statum, in pristinum restituere—to restore a man to his former position.

in tanta rerum (temporum) iniquitate—under such unfavourable circumstances.

res dubiae, perditae, afflictæ—a critical position ; a hopeless state of affairs.

in angustias adducere aliquem—to place some one in an embarrassing position.

in angustiis, difficultatibus, esse or versari angustiis premi, difficultatibus affici } to be in a dilemma ; in difficulties.

agitur praeclare, bene cum aliquo—so-and-so is in a very satisfactory position ; prospers.

res ita est, ita (sic) se habet—the facts are these ; the matter stands thus.

eadem (longe alia) est huius rei ratio—the case is exactly similar (entirely different).

hoc longe aliter, secus est—this is quite another matter.

res (ita) fert—circumstances make this necessary ; the exigencies of the case are these.

pro re (nata), pro tempore } according to circumstances.
pro tempore et pro re

res eo or *in eum locum deducta est, ut . . .*—the matter has gone so far that . . . ; the state of affairs is such that . . .

quo loco res tue sunt?—how are you getting on?

eadem est causa mea or *in eadem causa sum*—my circumstances have not altered.

si quid (humanitus) mihi accidat or *acciderit*—if anything should happen to me ; if I die.

quae cum ita sint—under such circumstances.

utcumque res ceciderit—whatever happens ; in any case.

2. COMMENCEMENT—END—RESULT

initium capere; incipere ab aliqua re—to begin with a thing.

initium facere, ducere, sumere (alicuius rei)—to commence a thing.

ab exiguis initiis proficisci—to start from small beginnings.

parare with Inf.

aggredi ad aliquid faciendum } to prepare to do a thing.

*incunabula*¹ *doctrinae*—the origin, first beginnings of learning.

finem facere alicuius rei
finem imponere, afferre, constituere alicui rei
ad finem aliquid adducere
ad exitum aliquid perducere
finem habere—to come to an end.

to finish, complete, fulfil,
 ' accomplish a thing.

¹ *incunabula* literally swaddling-clothes. *cunabula*, cradle, is not used in this metaphorical sense except in post-Augustan Latin.

aliquid (*bene, prospere*) *succedit* or *procedit* (opp. *parum procedere, non succedere*)—the matter progresses favourably, succeeds.

eventum, exitum (*felicem*) *habere*—to turn out (well); to result (satisfactorily).

quorsum haec res cadet or *evadet*?—what will be the issue, end, consequence of the matter?

ad irritum redigere aliquid—to frustrate, nullify.

res aliter cecidit ac putaveram—the result has surprised me; I was not prepared for this development.

quid illo fiet?—what will become of him?

quid huic homini (also *hoc homine*) *faciam*?—what am I to do with this fellow?

3. CAUSE—MOTIVE—ORIGIN

causam afferre—to quote as a reason; give as excuse.

*iustis de*¹ *causis*—for valid reasons.

magnae (*graves*) *necessariae causae*—cogent, decisive reasons.

non sine causa—on good grounds; reasonably.

quid causae fuit cur . . . ?—how came it that . . . ?

<i>causa posita est in aliqua re</i> <i>causa repetenda est ab aliqua</i> <i>re</i> (not <i>quaerenda</i>)	}	the motive, cause, is to be found in . . .
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---	--------------------------------------------

multae causae me impulerunt ad aliquid or *ut* . . . —I was induced by several considerations to . . .

causam interponere or *interserere*—to interpose, put forward an argument, a reason.

¹ Notice the order; so regularly *ea* and *qua de causa*; but *ob eam causam* not *eam ob causam*. For the meaning of *iustus* cf. xvi. 5 *bellum iustum* and xvi. 10a *praelium iustum*.

praetendere, praetexere aliquid—to make something an excuse, pretext.

causam idoneam nancisci—to find a suitable pretext.

per causam (with Gen.)—under the pretext, pretence of . . .

causae rerum et consecutiones—cause and effect.

causae extrinsecus allatae (opp. *in ipsa re positae*)—extraneous causes.

rerum causae aliae ex aliis nexae—concatenation, interdependence of causes.

ex parvis saepe magnarum rerum momenta pendent—important results are often produced by trivial causes.

ex aliqua re nasci, manare
ab aliqua re proficisci } to originate in, arise from.

ex aliqua re redundare (*in* or *ad aliquid*)—to accrue in great abundance.

utilitas efflorescit ex aliqua re—untold advantages arise from a thing.

e fontibus haurire (opp. *rivulos consectari* or *fontes non videre*)—to draw from the fountain-head.

haec ex eodem fonte fluunt, manant—these things have the same origin.

fons et caput (*vid.* p. 24, note)—source, origin.

4. REGARD—IMPORTANCE—INFLUENCE— POWER—INCLINATION

rationem habere alicuius rei } to have regard for; take
*respicere*¹ *aliquid* } into consideration.

quo in genere—from this point of view; similarly.

¹ But *respicere ad aliquid* (*aliquem*) = to look round at an object.

in ea re omnia vertuntur—all depends on this; this is the decisive point.

constare ex aliqua re—to be composed of; to consist of.
cernitur (in) aliqua re (not ex aliqua re)—it is evident from . . .

in manu, in potestate alicuius
situm, positum esse
penes aliquem esse } to be in a person's power.

*res integra*¹ *est*—the matter is still undecided; it is an open question.

res mihi integra est—I have not yet committed myself.

mihi non est integrum, ut . . .—it is no longer in my power.

integrum (causam integram) sibi reservare—to leave the question open; to refuse to commit oneself.

quantum in me (situm) est—as far as in me lies; to the best of my ability.

penes te arbitrium huius rei est—the decision of the question rests with you.

arbitrio alicuius omnia permittere
omnium rerum arbitrium alicui
permittere } to put the matter entirely in some one's hands.

arbitratu, arbitrio tuo—just as you wish.

5. OPPORTUNITY—POSSIBILITY—OCCASION—CHANCE

occasio datur, offertur—a favourable² opportunity presents itself.

¹ The proper meaning of *integer* (*in-TAG, tango*) is untouched, unsullied.

² Not *occasio opportuna, bona, pulchra*, the notion “favourable” being contained in the word itself. We find, however, *occasio praeclara, ampla, tanta*, not unfrequently.

occasione data, oblata } when occasion offers ; as oppor-
per occasionem } tunity occurs.

quotienscunque occasio oblata est ; omnibus locis—on every
occasion ; at every opportunity.

<i>occasionem alicui dare, praeberē</i>	} to give a man the opportunity of doing a thing.
<i>alicuius rei or ad aliquid faciendum</i>	
<i>facultatem alicui dare alicuius rei or ut possit . . .</i>	
<i>potestatem,¹ copiam alicui dare, facere with Gen. gerund.</i>	

occasionem nancisci—to get, meet with, a favourable
opportunity.

occasione uti—to make use of, avail oneself of an oppor-
tunity.

occasionem praetermittere, amittere (through carelessness),
omittere (deliberately), *dimittere* (through indiffer-
ence)—to lose, let slip an opportunity.

*occasione deesse*²—to neglect an opportunity.

occasionem arripere—to seize an opportunity.

facultatem, potestatem alicui eripere, adimere—to deprive
a man of the chance of doing a thing.

nulla est facultas alicuius rei—no opportunity of carrying
out an object presents itself.

locum dare suspicioni—to give ground for suspicion.

¹ Notice *potestatem alicui pugnandi facere*, to offer battle, and
potestatem sui facere alicui, (1) to give opportunity of battle, and
also (2) to grant an audience to (cf. *sui conveniendi potestatem
facere*).

² In the same way *desse officio*, to leave one's duties undone ;
d. muneris, to neglect the claims of one's vocation ; *d. rei publicae*,
to be careless of state interests, to be unpatriotic ; *d. sibi*, not to
do one's best.

ansas dare ad reprehendendum, reprehensionis—to give occasion for blame ; to challenge criticism.

ansam habere reprehensionis—to contain, afford matter for criticism.

adduci aliqua re (ad aliquid or ut . . .)—to be induced by a consideration.

nescio quo casu (with Indic.)—by some chance or other.

temere et fortuito ; forte (et) temere—quite accidentally, fortuitously.

6. SUCCESS—GOOD FORTUNE

fortuna secunda uti—to be fortunate, lucky.

fortunae favore or prospero flatu } to be favoured by For-
fortunae uti (vid. note, p. 84) } tune ; to bask in For-
fortunam fautricem nancisci } tune's smiles.

fortuna caecos homines efficit, animos occaecat—Fortune makes men shortsighted, infatuates them.

fortunam tentare, experiri—to try one's luck.

fortunam periclitari (periculum facere)—to run a risk ; to tempt Providence.

fortunae se committere—to trust to luck.

fortunam in manibus habere—to have success in one's grasp.

fortunam ex manibus dimittere—to let success slip through one's fingers.

fortuna commutatur, se inclinatur—luck is changing, waning.

ludibrium fortunae—the plaything of Fortune.

is, quem fortuna complexa est—Fortune's favourite.

a fortuna desertum, derelictum esse—to be abandoned by good luck.

fortuna aliquem effert—Fortune exalts a man, makes him conspicuous.

rebus secundis efferrī—to be puffed up by success; to be made arrogant by prosperity.

ad felicitatem (magnus) cumu-

lus accedit ex aliqua re

aliquid felicitatis cumulum

affert

aliquid felicitatem magno

cumulo auget

} his crowning happiness is
produced by a thing;
the culminating point of
his felicity is . . .

in rebus prosperis et ad voluntatem fluentibus—when life runs smoothly.

*beata vita, beate vivere, beatum esse*¹—happiness, bliss.

ad bene beateque vivendum—for a life of perfect happiness.

peropportune accidit, quod—it is most fortunate that . . .

7. MISFORTUNE—FATE—RUIN

fortuna adversa

res adversae, afflictæ, perditæ

} misfortune, adversity.

in calamitatem incidere—to be overtaken by calamity.

calamitatem accipere, subire—to suffer mishap.

nihil calamitatis (in vita) videre—to live a life free from all misfortune.

calamitatem haurire

omnes labores exanclare

} to drain the cup of sorrow.²

¹ *beatitas* and *beatitudo* are used by Cicero in one passage only (De Nat. Deorum, I. 34. 95), but merely as a linguistic experiment.

² In Latin metaphor the verb only, as a rule, is sufficient to express the metaphorical meaning—e.g. *amicitiā iungere cum aliquo*, to be bound by the bands of affection to any one; *religionem labefactare*, to undermine the very foundations of belief; *bellum exstinguere*, to extinguish the torch of war; *cuncta bello ardent*, the fires of war are

calamitatem, pestem inferre alicui—to bring mishap, ruin on a person.

calamitatibus affligi—to be the victim of misfortune.

calamitatibus obrui—to be overwhelmed with misfortune.

calamitatibus defungi—to come to the end of one's troubles.

calamitate doctus—schooled by adversity.

conflictari (cum) adversa fortuna—to struggle with adversity.

in malis iacere—to be broken down by misfortune.

malis urgeri—to be hard pressed by misfortune.

fortunae vicissitudines—the vicissitudes of fortune.

ancipites et varii casus—the changes and chances of this life.

sub varios incertosque casus subiectum esse—to have to submit to the uncertainties of fortune; to be subject to Fortune's caprice.

multis casibus iactari—to experience the ups and downs of life.

ad omnes casus subsidia comparare—to be prepared for all that may come.

varia fortuna uti—to experience the vicissitudes of fortune; to have a chequered career.

*multis iniquitatibus exerceri*¹—to be severely tried by misfortune.

raging all around; *libido consedit*, the storm of passion has ceased; *animum pellere*, to strike the heart-strings; *vetustas monumenta exederat*, the tooth of time had eaten away the monuments.

¹ The first meaning of *exercere* is to keep in motion, give no rest to. Then, metaphorically, to keep busy, to harass—e.g. *fortuna aliquem vehementer exercet*. Lastly, *exercere* is used to express the main activity in any branch of industry, thus, *exercere agros*, to farm; *metalla*, to carry on a mining industry; *navem*, to fit out ships, be a shipowner; *vectigalia*, to levy, collect taxes, used specially of the *publicani*; *qui exercet iudicium*, the presiding judge (praetor).

fortunae telis propositum esse—to be exposed to the assaults of fate.

fortunae obiectum esse—to be abandoned to fate.

ad iniurias fortunae expositum esse—to be a victim of the malice of Fortune.

fortunae cedere—to acquiesce in one's fate.

aliquem affligere, perdere, pessumdare, in praeceps dare—to bring a man to ruin ; to destroy.

<i>praecipitem agi, ire</i>	} to be ruined, undone.
<i>ad exitium vocari</i>	
<i>ad interitum ruere</i>	
<i>in perniciem incurrere</i>	

<i>pestem alicui (in aliquem) machinari</i>	} to compass, devise a man's overthrow, ruin.
<i>perniciem (exitium) alicui afferre,</i>	
<i>moliri, parare</i>	

ab exitio, ab interitu aliquem vindicare—to rescue from destruction.

8. DANGER—RISK—SAFETY

in periculo esse or versari—to be in danger.

res in summo discrimine versatur—the position is very critical.

in vitae discrimine versari—to be in peril of one's life.

in pericula incidere, incurrere—to find oneself in a hazardous position.

pericula alicui impendent, imminere—dangers threaten a man.

pericula in or ad aliquem redundant—many dangers hem a person in ; one meets new risks at every turn.

pericula subire, adire, suscipere—to incur danger, risk.

periculis se offerre—to expose oneself to peril.

salutem, vitam suam in discrimen offerre (not *exponere*)—to risk one's life.

aliquem, aliquid in periculum
*(discrimen) adducere, vocare*¹ } to endanger, imperil a
alicui periculum creare, conflare } person or thing.

in periculum capitis, in discrimen vitae se inferre—to recklessly hazard one's life.

salus, caput, vita alicuius agitur, periclitatur, in discrimine est or *versatur*—a man's life is at stake, is in very great danger.

in ipso periculi discrimine—at the critical moment.

aliquem ex periculo eripere, servare—to rescue from peril.

nullum periculum recusare pro—to avoid no risk in order to . . .

periculis perfungi—to surmount dangers.

periculum facere alicuius rei—to make trial of; to risk.

periculum hostis facere—to try one's strength with the enemy; to try issue of battle.

res ad extremum casum
perducta est
ad extrema peruentum est } affairs are desperate; we are
 } reduced to extremities.

in tuto esse—to be in a position of safety.

in tuto collocare aliquid—to ensure the safety of a thing.

¹ *vocare* helps to form several phrases—e.g. *in invidiam, in suspicionem, in dubium, ad exitium, in periculum vocare*. It is used in the passive to express periphrastically the passive of verbs which have only an active voice—e.g. *in invidiam vocari*, to become unpopular, be hated, *invideor* not being used. Cf. *in invidiam venire*.

9. ASSISTANCE—DELIVERANCE—CON- SOLATION

auxilium, opem, salutem ferre alicui—to bring aid to ; to rescue.

auxilio alicui venire—to come to assist any one.

alicuius opem implorare—to implore a person's help.

confugere ad aliquem or *ad opem, ad fidem alicuius*—to fly to some one for refuge.

*ad extremum auxilium descendere*¹—to be reduced to one's last resource.

*auxilium praesens*²—prompt assistance.

adesse alicui or *alicuius rebus* (opp. *desse*)—to assist, stand by a person.

salutem alicui afferre—to deliver, rescue a person.

<i>saluti suae consulere, prospicere</i>	} to take measures for one's safety ; to look after one's own interests.
<i>suis rebus</i> or <i>sibi consulere</i>	

salutem expedire—to effect a person's deliverance.

solacium praebere—to comfort.

nihil habere consolationis—to afford no consolation.

hoc solacio frui, uti—to solace oneself with the thought . . .

consolari aliquem de aliqua re—to comfort a man in a matter ; to condole with him.

consolari dolorem alicuius—to soothe grief.

¹ Similarly *descendere* is frequently used of consenting unwillingly to a thing, condescending. Cf. vi. 9 ad fin. and xvi. 9.

² Notice too *poena praesens*, instant punishment, *pecunia praesens*, ready money, *medicina praesens*, efficacious remedy ; *deus praesens*, a propitious deity ; *in rem praesentem venire*, to go to the very spot to make a closer examination.

consolari aliquem in miseriis—to comfort in misfortune.

hoc (illo) solacio me consolor
haec (illa) res me consolatur } I console myself with . . .

10. RICHES—WANT—POVERTY

divitiis, copiis abundare—to be rich, wealthy.

magnas opes habere
opibus maxime florere
omnibus opibus circumfluere } to be very rich ; to be in a position of affluence.

fortunis maximis ornatum esse—to be in the enjoyment of a large fortune.

in omnium rerum abundantia vivere—to live in great affluence.

aliquem ex paupere divitem facere—to raise a man from poverty to wealth.

inopia alicuius rei laborare, premi—to suffer from want of a thing.

ad egestatem, ad inopiam (summam omnium rerum) redigi
 —to be reduced to (abject) poverty.

vitam inopem sustentare, tolerare—to earn a precarious livelihood.

in egestate esse, versari
vitam in egestate degere } to live in poverty, destitution.

in summa egestate or mendicitate esse—to be entirely destitute ; to be a beggar.

stipem colligere—to beg alms.

stipem (pecuniam) conferre—to contribute alms.

II. UTILITY—ADVANTAGE—HARM— DISADVANTAGE

usui or *ex usu esse*—to be of use.

utilitatem afferre, praeberere—to be serviceable.

multum (nihil) ad communem utilitatem afferre—to considerably (in no way) further the common good.

aliquid in usum suum conferre—to employ in the furtherance of one's interests.

omnia ad suam utilitatem referre—to consider one's own advantage in everything

rationibus alicuius prospicere

or *consulere* (opp. *officere*,
obstare, adversari)

commodis alicuius servire

commoda alicuius tueri

} to look after, guard a
person's interests, wel-
fare.

meae rationes ita tulerunt—my interests demanded it.

*fructum (uberrimum) capere, percipere, consequi ex aliqua re*¹
—to derive (great) profit, advantage from a thing.

fructus ex hac re redundant in or *ad me*—(great) advantage accrues to me from this.

aliquid ad meum fructum redundat—I am benefited by a thing.

quid attinet? with *Infin.*—what is the use of?

cui bono?—who gets the advantage from this? who is the interested party?

¹ Also *fructum alicuius rei capere, percipere, ferre, consequi ex aliqua re*—e.g. *virtutis fructus ex re publica* (*magnos, lactos, uberes*) *capere*=to be handsomely rewarded by the state for one's high character.

damnum (opp. *lucrum*) *facere* }
damno affici } to suffer loss, harm,
detrimentum capere, accipere, facere } damage.¹

*iacturam*² *alicuius rei facere*—to throw away, sacrifice.

damnum inferre, afferre alicui—to do harm to, injure any one.

damnum ferre—to know how to endure calamity.

incommodo afficere aliquem—to inconvenience, injure a person.

incommodis mederi—to relieve a difficulty.

damnum or *detrimentum sarcire* (not *reparare*)—to make good, repair a loss or injury.

damnum compensare cum aliqua re—to balance a loss by anything.

res repetere—to demand restitution, satisfaction.

res restituere—to give restitution, satisfaction.

12. GOODWILL—KINDNESS—INCLINATION— FAVOUR

benevolo animo esse in aliquem }
benevolentiam habere erga aliquem } to be well-disposed
} towards . . .

benevolentiam, favorem, voluntatem alicuius sibi conciliare

¹ Notice too *calamitatem, cladem, incommodum accipere*, to suffer mishap, reverse, inconvenience; *naufragium facere*, to be shipwrecked.

² *damnum* (opp. *lucrum*) = loss, especially of worldly possessions; *detrimentum* (opp. *emolumentum*) = harm inflicted by others; *fraus* = deceitful injury; *iactura* (properly “throwing overboard”) = the intentional sacrifice of something valuable in order either to avert injury or to gain some greater advantage. “Harmful” = *inutilis, qui nocet*, etc., not *noxius*, which is only used absolutely—e.g. *homo noxius*, the offender, evildoer.

or *colligere* (*ex aliqua re*)—to find favour with some one ; to get into their good graces.

benevolentiam alicui praestare,
in aliquem conferre
benevolentia aliquem complecti
 or *prosequi* } to show kindness to . . .

gratosum esse alicui or apud
aliquem
in gratia esse apud aliquem } to be popular with ; to stand
 well with a person.

multum valere gratia apud
aliquem
florere gratia alicuius } to be highly favoured by ; to
 be influential with . . .

gratiam inire ab aliquo or apud
aliquem
in gratiam alicuius venire } to gain a person's esteem,
 friendship.

gratiam alicuius sibi quaerere, sequi, more strongly *aucupari*
 —to court a person's favour ; to ingratiate oneself
 with . . .

studere, favere alicui
studiosum esse alicuius
propenso animo, studio esse
 or *propensa voluntate esse*
in aliquem (opp. *averso*
animo esse ab aliquo) } to look favourably upon ; to
 support.

alicui morem gerere, obsequi—to comply with a person's
 wishes ; to humour.

*alicuius causa*¹ *velle or cupere*—to be favourably disposed
 towards.

gratum (*gratissimum*) *alicui facere*—to do any one a (great)
 favour.

¹ Probably originally *omnia alicuius causa velle*=to wish every-
 thing (favourable) in some one's behalf.

se conformare, se accommodare } to accommodate oneself to
ad alicuius voluntatem } another's wishes.
alicuius voluntati morem gerere }

*se convertere, converti ad alicuius nutum*¹—to take one's directions from another ; to obey him in everything.
totum se fingere et accommodare ad alicuius arbitrium et nutum—to be at the beck and call of another ; to be his creature.

voluntatem or *animum alicuius a se abalienare, aliquem a se abalienare* or *alienare*—to become estranged, alienated from some one.

13. BENEFIT—GRATITUDE—RECOMPENSE

beneficium alicui dare, tribuere } to do any one a service
beneficio aliquem afficere, ornare } or kindness.

beneficia in aliquem conferre—to heap benefits upon . . .

beneficiis aliquem obstringere, obligare, devincire—to lay any one under an obligation by kind treatment.

beneficium remunerari or *reddere* (*cumulate*)—to (richly) recompense a kindness or service.

gratus (opp. *ingratus*) *animus*²—gratitude.

gratiam alicui debere—to owe gratitude to ; to be under an obligation to a person.

¹ But *se convertere ad aliquem* = either (1) to approach with hostile intention, or (2) to turn to some one for sympathy or assistance.

² *animus* is used similarly in several periphrases to express abstract qualities—e.g. *animus inexorabilis* = inflexibility, severity ; *animus implacabilis* = implacability ; *animus (fides) venalis* = venality. Cf. *simplices mores, simplex natura, ratio, genus* = simplicity (*simplicitas* is post-Augustan and usually = frankness, candour). *immemor ingenium* = forgetfulness (*oblivio* in this sense is not classical).

gratiam alicui habere—to feel gratitude (in one's heart).

gratiam alicui referre (*meritam, debitam*) *pro aliqua re*—to show gratitude (in one's acts).

gratias alicui agere pro aliqua re—to thank a person (in words).

grates agere (*dis immortalibus*)—to give thanks to heaven.

gratiam mereri—to merit thanks; to do a thankworthy action.

par pari referre
paria paribus respondere } to return like for like.

bonam (*praeclaram*) *gratiam referre*—to reward amply; to give manifold recompense for.

benefacta maleficiis pensare—to return evil for good.

maleficia benefactis remunerari
pro maleficiis beneficia reddere } to return good for evil.

14. MERIT—VALUE—REWARD

bene, praeclare (*melius, optime*) *mereri*¹ *de aliquo*—to deserve well at some one's hands; to do a service to . . .

male mereri de aliquo—to deserve ill of a person; to treat badly.

meritum alicuius in or *erga aliquem*—what a man merits at another's hands.

nullo meo merito—I had not deserved it.

ex, pro merito—according to a man's deserts.

multum (*aliquid*) *alicui rei tribuere*—to consider of importance; to set much (some) store by a thing.

¹ *mereri* is a middle verb, and consequently always has an adverb with it.

multum alicui tribuere—to value, esteem a person.

*praemiis (amplissimis, maximis) aliquem afficere*¹—to remunerate (handsomely).

meritum praemium alicui persolvere—to reward a man according to his deserts.

praemium exponere or *proponere*—(to encourage) by offering a reward.

praemium ponere—to offer a prize (for the winner).

palnam deferre, dare alicui—to award the prize to . . .

palnam ferre, auferre—to win the prize.

pacta merces alicuius rei—the stipulated reward for anything.

mercede conductum esse—to be hired, suborned.

15. REQUESTS—WISHES—COMMISSIONS—ORDERS

orare et obsecrare aliquem
magno opere, vehementer, etiam
atque etiam rogare aliquem } to entreat earnestly ; to
 make urgent requests.

precibus aliquem fatigare—to importune with petitions.

supplicibus verbis orare—to crave humbly ; to supplicate.

precibus obsequi—to grant a request.

alicui petenti satisfacere, non deesse—to accede to a man's petitions.

magnis (infimis) precibus moveri—to be influenced by, to yield to urgent (abject) entreaty.

¹ Notice the numerous phrases of which *afficere* is a part—e.g. *afficere aliquem admiratione, beneficio, exilio, honore, iniuria, laude, poena, supplicio*. Especially important is its passive use—e.g. *affici admiratione*, to admire ; *gaudio, voluptate*, to rejoice, be pleased ; *dolore*, to be pained, vexed ; *poena*, to suffer punishment.

negare, more strongly denegare
alicui aliquid
petenti alicui negare aliquid
repudiare, aspernari preces ali-
cuius.

} to refuse, reject a request.

nihil tibi a me postulanti recusabo—I will refuse you nothing.

aliquid ab aliquo impetrare—to gain one's point with any one.

optata mihi contingunt—my wishes are being fulfilled.

voluntati alicuius satisfacere, obsequi—to satisfy a person's wishes.

ex sententia—as one would wish ; to one's mind.

aliquid optimis ominibus prosequi (*vid. p. 88 note*)—to wish prosperity to an undertaking.

bene id tibi vertat!—I wish you all success in the matter.

mandatum, negotium alicui dare
negotium ad aliquem deferre

} to entrust a matter to a person ; to commission.

mandatum exsequi, persequi, conficere—to execute a commission.

iussa (usually only in plur.), *imperata facere*—to carry out orders.

16. FRIENDSHIP—ENMITY—RECONCILIATION

(cf. xii. 8).

amicitiam cum aliquo jungere, facere, inire, contrahere—to form a friendship with any one.

amicitiam colere—to keep up, foster a connection.

uti aliquo amico—to be friendly with any one.

est or *intercedit mihi cum*
aliquo amicitia
sunt or *intercedunt mihi*
*cum aliquo inimicitiae*¹

I am on good (bad) terms with
a person.

uti aliquo familiariter—to be on very intimate terms
with . . .

artissimo amicitiae vinculo or *summa familiaritate cum*
aliquo coniunctum esse—to be bound by the closest
ties of friendship.

vetustate amicitiae coniunctum esse—to be very old
friends.

amicitiam alicuius appetere—to court a person's friend-
ship.

in amicitiam alicuius recipi
ad alicuius amicitiam se
conferre, se applicare

to gain some one's friendship ;
to become intimate with.

aliquem (tertium) ad (in) amicitiam ascribere—to admit
another into the circle of one's intimates.

amicitiam renuntiare
amicitiam dissuere, dissolvere,
praecidere

to renounce, give up a
friendship.

amicissimus meus or *mihi*—my best friend.

homo intimus, familiarissimus mihi—my most intimate
acquaintance.

inimicitias gerere, habere, exercere cum aliquo—to be at
enmity with a man.

inimicitias cum aliquo suscipere—to make a person one's
enemy.

inimicitias deponere—to lay aside one's differences.

aequi iniqui—friend and foe.

¹ The singular *inimicitia* is only used to express the abstract idea
“enmity.”

<i>placare aliquem alicui</i> or <i>in aliquem</i>	} to reconcile two people ; to be a mediator.
<i>reconciliare alicuius animum</i> or simply <i>aliquem alicui</i>	
<i>in gratiam aliquem cum aliquo reducere</i>	
<i>in gratiam cum aliquo redire</i>	} to be reconciled ; to make up a quarrel.
<i>sibi aliquem, alicuius animum reconciliare</i> or <i>reconciliari</i>	
<i>alicui</i>	

17. AUTHORITY—DIGNITY (cf. xiv. 3)

<i>magna auctoritate esse</i>	}	to possess great authority ;
<i>auctoritate valere</i> or <i>florere</i>		to be an influential person.
<i>magna auctoritas est in aliquo</i>		
<i>multum auctoritate valere, posse</i>	}	to have great influence with a person ; to have considerable weight.
<i>apud aliquem</i>		
<i>magna auctoritas alicuius est</i>		
<i>apud aliquem</i>		
<i>alicuius auctoritas multum valet</i>		
<i>apud aliquem</i>		
<i>auctoritatem</i> or <i>dignitatem sibi conciliare, parare</i> —to gain dignity ; to make oneself a person of consequence.		
<i>ad summam auctoritatem pervenire</i> —to attain to the highest eminence.		
<i>auctoritatem alicuius amplificare</i> (opp. <i>imminuere, minuere</i>) —to increase a person's dignity.		
<i>auctoritati, dignitati alicuius illudere</i> —to insult a person's dignity.		
<i>dignitas est summa in aliquo</i>	}	to be in a dignified posi- tion.
<i>summa dignitate praeditum esse</i>		

<i>aliquid alienum (a) dignitate sua</i>	}	to consider a thing beneath one's dignity.
or merely <i>a se ducere</i>		
<i>aliquid infra se ducere</i> or <i>infra</i>		
<i>se positum arbitrari</i>		

18. PRAISE—APPROVAL—BLAME—REPROACH

<i>laudem tribuere, impertire alicui</i>	}	to praise, extol, com- mend a person.
<i>laude afficere aliquem</i>		
(<i>maximis, summis</i>) <i>laudibus</i>		
<i>efferre aliquem</i> or <i>aliquid</i>		

eximia laude ornare aliquem

omni laude cumulare aliquem — to overwhelm with eulogy.

laudibus aliquem (aliquid) in caelum ferre, efferre, tollere — to extol, laud to the skies.

alicuius laudes praedicare — to spread a person's praises.

aliquem beatum praedicare — to consider happy.

<i>omnium undique laudem colligere</i>	}	to win golden opinions from every one.
<i>maximam ab omnibus laudem</i>		
<i>adipisci</i>		

aliquid laudi alicui ducere, dare — to consider a thing creditable to a man.

aliquem coram, in os or *praesentem laudare* — to praise a man to his face.

recte, bene fecisti quod . . . — you were right in . . . ; you did right to . . .

res mihi probatur — a thing meets with my approval.

res a me probatur — I express my approval of a thing.

hoc in te reprehendo (not *ob eam rem*) — I blame this in you ; I censure you for this.

vituperationem subire
in vituperationem, reprehensionem } to suffer reproof; to
cadere, incidere, venire } be criticised, blamed.
exprobrare alicui aliquid }
aliquid alicui crimini dare, } to reproach a person with . . .
vertere }
conqueri, expostulare cum aliquo de aliqua re—to expostu-
 late with a person about a thing.

19. RUMOUR—GOSSIP—NEWS—MENTION

rumor, fama, sermo est or *manat*—report says; people say.
rumor, fama viget—a rumour is prevalent.
fama serpit (per urbem)—a report is spreading imper-
 ceptibly.
rumor increbrescit—a report, an impression is gaining
 ground.
rumorem spargere }
famam dissipare } to spread a rumour.
dubii rumores afferuntur ad nos—vague rumours reach us.
auditione et fama accepisse aliquid }
fando aliquid audivisse } to know from hearsay.
ex eo audiui, cum diceret—I heard him say . . .
vulgo dicitur, pervulgatum est—every one says.
in ore omnium or *omnibus (ho-*
minum or *hominibus,* but }
 only *mihi, tibi,* etc.) *esse* } to be in every one's mouth.
per omnium ora ferri }
in ore habere aliquid (Fam. 6. 18. 5)—to harp on a
 thing, be always talking of it.
efferre or *edere aliquid in vulgus*—to divulge, make
 public.

foras efferrī, palam fierī, percrebrescere, divulgari, in medium proferri, exire, emanare—to become known, become a topic of common conversation (used of things).

in sermonem hominum venire
in ora vulgi abire } to be a subject for gossip.

fabulam fierī—to be the talk of the town, a scandal.

nuntio allato or accepto—on receiving the news.

Romam nuntiatum est, allatum est—news reached Rome.
certiorem facere alicuius rei (alicuius rei or de aliqua re)—to inform a person.

*mentionem facere alicuius rei or de aliqua re*¹—to mention a thing.

mentionem inicere de aliqua re or
 Acc. c. Inf.
in mentionem alicuius rei incidere
mentio alicuius rei incidit } to mention a thing incidentally, casually.

20. FAME—REPUTATION

gloriam, famam sibi comparare—to gain distinction.

gloriam (immortalem) consequi, adipisci—to win (undying) fame.

gloriae, laudi esse
laudem afferre } to confer distinction on a person; to redound to his credit.

gloria, laude florere—to be very famous, illustrious.

summa gloria florere—to have reached the highest pinnacle of eminence.

¹ Not *commemorare*, the fundamental meaning of which is “to make a person mindful of . . .,” and implies an emphatic reference to a definite point.

<i>clarum fieri, nobilitari, illustrari</i> (not the post-classical <i>clarescere</i> or <i>inclarescere</i>) <i>gloriam colligere, in summam gloriam venire</i>	}	to become famous, distinguish oneself.		
<i>aliquem immortalī gloria afficere</i> <i>aliquem sempiternae gloriae commendare</i>			}	to confer undying fame on, immortalise some one.
<i>immortalitatem consequi, adipisci, sibi parēre</i>				
<i>gloria duci</i> <i>laudis studio trahi</i> <i>laudem, gloriam quaerere</i>	}	to be guided by ambition.		
<i>stimulis gloriae concitari</i>			}	to be spurred on by ambition.
<i>gloriae, laudis cupiditate incensum esse, flagrare</i>				
<i>de gloria, fama alicuius detrahere</i> <i>alicuius gloriae or simply alicui obrectare</i> <i>alicuius famam, laudem imminuere</i>	}	to detract from a person's reputation, wilfully underestimate a person.		
<i>obscurare alicuius gloriam, laudem, famam</i> ¹ (not <i>obscurare aliquem</i>)			}	to render obscure, eclipse a person.
<i>famae servire, consulere</i>				
<i>famam ante collectam tueri, conservare</i>	}	to live up to one's reputation.		
<i>bene, male audire (ab aliquo)</i> <i>bona, mala existimatio est de aliquo</i>			}	to have a good or bad reputation, be spoken well, ill of.

¹ In the same way, to improve a man, *alicuius mores corrigere* (not *aliquem c.*); to understand some one, *alicuius orationem* or *quid dicat intellegere*.

famam crudelitatis subire (Catil. 4. 6. 12)—to gain the reputation of cruelty.

infamiam alicui inferre, aspergere,
conflare
infamem facere aliquem } to damage a person's character, bring him into bad odour.

magnam sui famam relinquere—to leave a great reputation behind one.

opinionem virtutis habere—to have the reputation of virtue.

*existimatio*¹ *hominum, omnium*—the common opinion, the general idea.

21. HONOUR—DISGRACE—IGNOMINY

esse in honore apud aliquem—to be honoured, esteemed by some one.

honorem alicui habere, tribuere
aliquem honore afficere, augere,
ornare, prosequi (vid. note, p. 88) } to honour, show respect for, a person.

aliquem cupiditate honorum inflammare (or *aliquem ad cupiditatem honorum inflammare*)—to kindle ambition in some one's mind.

honores concupiscere (opp. *aspernari*)—to aspire to dignity, high honours.

honoris causa aliquem nominare or *appellare*—to speak of some one respectfully.

statuam alicui ponere, constituere—to set up a statue in some one's honour.

¹ *existimatio* has two uses: (1) active—opinion held by others, criticism; (2) passive—reputation, character, usually in a good sense, consequently = good reputation without the addition of *bona, integra*, etc.

aliquem colere et observare (Att. 2. 19)—to pay respect to,
be courteous to a person.

aliquem ignominia afficere, notare } to inflict an indignity
alicui ignominiam inurere } upon, insult a person.

infamiam concipere, subire, sibi conflare—to incur ignominy.

vitae splendori (em) maculas (is) aspergere—to sully one's fair fame.

notam turpitudinis alicui or *vitae alicuius inurere*—to injure a man's character, tarnish his honour.

ignominiam non ferre—to chafe under an indignity, repudiate it.

maculam (conceptam) delere, eluere—to blot out a reproach.

22. EFFORT—INDUSTRY—LABOUR—EXERTION

studiose (diligenter, enixe, sedulo, maxime) dare operam, ut . . .—to take great pains in order to . . .

egregiam operam (multum, plus)
etc. *operae) dare alicui rei*
operam alicui rei tribuere, in } to expend great labour
aliquid conferre } on a thing.
operam (laborem, curam) in
or *ad aliquid impendere* }

multum operae ac laboris consumere in aliqua re—to exert oneself very energetically in a matter.

studium, industriam (not *diligentiam*) *collocare, ponere in aliqua re*—to apply oneself zealously, diligently to a thing.

incumbere in (ad) aliquid—to be energetic about, throw one's heart into a thing.

*opus*¹ *facere* (De Senect. 7. 24)—to do work (especially agricultural).

opus aggredi
ad opus faciendum accedere } to take a task in hand, engage upon it.

res est multi laboris et sudoris—the matter involves much labour and fatigue.

desudare et elaborare in aliqua re (De Senect. 11. 38)—to exert oneself very considerably in a matter.

labori, operae non parcere—to spare no pains.

laborem non intermittere—to work without intermission.

nullum tempus a labore intermittere—not to leave off work for an instant.

lucubrare (Liv. 1. 57)—to work by night, burn the midnight oil.

inanem laborem suscipere
operam (et oleum) perdere or
frustra consumere } to lose one's labour.

rem actam or simply *actum agere* (proverb.)—to have all one's trouble for nothing.

labore supersedēre (itineris) (Fam. 4. 2. 4)—to spare oneself the trouble of the voyage.

patiens laboris—capable of exertion.

fugiens laboris—lazy.

operae pretium est (c. Inf.)—it is worth while.

acti labores incundi (proverb.)—rest after toil is sweet.

¹ *opus* always means the concrete work on which one is engaged; *labor* is the trouble, fatigue, resulting from effort; *opera* is the voluntary effort, the trouble spent on an object. Thus *laborare*=not simply to work, but to work energetically, with exertion and consequent fatigue; *operari*, to be busy with a thing. Terence thus distinguishes *opus* and *opera*: *quod in opere faciundo operae consumis tuae*. Cf. Verg. Aen. 1. 455 *operumque laborem miratur*=the trouble which such huge works must have cost.

contentionem adhibere—to exert oneself.

*omnes nervos*¹ *in aliqua re*

contendere

omnibus viribus or *nervis con-*

tendere, ut

omni ope atque opera or *omni*

virium contentione eniti, ut

contendere et laborare, ut

pro viribus eniti et laborare,

ut

to strain every nerve, do
one's utmost in a mat-
ter.

23. BUSINESS—LEISURE—INACTIVITY—IDLE- NESS

negotium suscipere—to undertake an affair.

negotium obire, exsequi—to execute, manage a business,
undertaking.

negotium conficere, expedire, transigere—to arrange, settle
a matter.

negotia agere, gerere—to be occupied with business, busy.

multis negotiis implicatum, districtum, distentum, obrütum
esse—to be involved in many undertakings; to be
much occupied, embarrassed, overwhelmed by
business-claims.

negotiis vacare—to be free from business.

¹ *nervi* properly=sinews, muscles, not nerves the existence of which was unknown to the ancients. Metaphorically *nervi* denotes not only strength in general but also specially—(1) vital power, elasticity, e.g. *omnes nervos virtutis elidere* (Tusc. 2. 11. 27), *incidere*, to paralyse the strength of virtue; (2) motive power, main-spring, essence, of a thing, e.g. *vectigalia nervi rei publicae sunt* (Imp. Pomp. 7. 17), *nervi belli pecunia* (Phil. 5. 2. 15).

occupatum esse in aliqua re
intentum esse alicui rei } to be engaged upon a matter.

negotium alicui facessere (Fam. 3. 10. 1)—to give a person
 trouble, inconvenience him.

magnum negotium est c. Inf.—it is a great undertaking
 to . . .

nullo negotio—without any trouble.

otiosum esse
in otio esse or *vivere*
otium habere
otio frui } to be at leisure.

otio abundare—to have abundance of leisure.

otium sequi, amplexari—to be a lover of ease, leisure.

otiosum tempus consumere in aliqua re—to spend one's
 leisure hours on an object.

*otio abūti*¹ or *otium ad suum usum transferre*—to use up,
 make full use of one's spare time.

(*in*) *otio languere et hebescere* } to grow slack with inactivity,
otio diffluere } stagnate.

desidia et languori se dedere } to abandon oneself to in-
*ignaviae*² et *socordiae se dare* } activity and apathy.

per luxum et ignaviam aetatem agere—to pass one's life in
 luxury and idleness.

¹ *abuti* properly = to consume, make full use of. From this
 is developed the rarer meaning to use in excess, abuse = *perverse*,
intemperanter, immoderate uti. Abuse, misuse = *pravus usus*,
vitium male utentium, insolens mos. *abusus* is only found in the
 Jurists, and *abusio* is a technical term of rhetoric = *κατάχρησις*.

² The original meaning of *ignavia* (*in-gnavus*, cf. *navus, navare*) is
 not cowardice but laziness.

24. PLEASURE—RECREATION

voluptatem ex aliqua re capere or *percipere*—to derive pleasure from a thing.

voluptate perfundi—to revel in pleasure, be blissfully happy.

voluptatibus frui
voluptates haurire } to take one's fill of enjoyment.

se totum voluptatibus dedere, tradere—to devote oneself absolutely to the pursuit of pleasure.

homo voluptarius (Tusc. 2. 7. 18)—a devotee of pleasure ; a self-indulgent man.

voluptatis illecebris deleniri
voluptatis blanditiis corrumpi } to be led astray, corrupted
 by the allurements of pleasure.

in voluptates se mergere—to plunge into a life of pleasure.

animum a voluptate sevocare—to hold aloof from all amusement.

voluptates (corporis)—sensual pleasure.

voluptatis or *animi causa* (B. G. 5. 12)—for one's own diversion ; to satisfy a whim.

deliciis diffluere—to wanton in the pleasures of sense.

animum relaxare, reficere, recreare or simply *se reficere, se recreare, refici, recreari* (*ex aliqua re*)—to recruit oneself, seek relaxation.

animum or simply *se remittere*
animo or simply *sibi indulgere* } to indulge oneself.

VI. THE MIND ; ITS FUNCTIONS

I. GENIUS—TALENT—INTELLIGENCE

magno animo esse—to be magnanimous, broad-minded.

animum attendere ad aliquid—to turn one's attention to a thing.

diligenter attendere (aliquid)—to attend carefully.

alias res or *aliud agere*—to be inattentive.

*animo adesse*¹—(1) to be attentive ; (2) to keep one's presence of mind.

vir magno ingenio, ingeniosus } a man of ability.
vir magno ingenio praeditus }

ingenio valere—to be talented, gifted.

ingenio abundare—to be very talented.

natura et ingenium—natural gifts.

ingenium acuere—to sharpen the wits.

ingenii acumen—penetration ; sagacity.

ingenii tarditas (opp. *celeritas*)—dulness of intellect.

ingenii infirmitas or *imbecillitas*—weakmindedness.

mentis compotem esse—to be of sane mind.

mente captum esse, mente alienata esse—to be out of one's mind.

sanae mentis esse—to be of sound mind.

mentis quasi luminibus officere (*vid.* p. 208) or *animo caliginem offundere*—to obscure the mental vision.

intellegentia or *mente multum valere*²—to possess great ability.

¹ For the second meaning cf. Cicero, *ades animo et omitte timorem, Scipio*.

² *captus*, in the meaning ability, capacity, only occurs in the phrase *ut captus est servorum* ; while *capacitas* merely means capacity, content, e.g. *vasorum*.

ad intellegentiam communem or *popularem accommodare aliquid*—to accommodate something to the standard of the popular intelligence.

2. IMAGINATION—THOUGHT

animo, cogitatione aliquid fingere (or simply *fingere*, but without *sibi*),
informare } to form an idea of
 a thing, imagine,
 conceive.

animo concipere aliquid

animo, cogitatione aliquid praecipere (Off. I. 23. 81)—to form a conception of a thing beforehand.

cogitatione sibi aliquid depingere—to picture to oneself.

ingenium, cogitatio—imagination.

ingenii vis or *celeritas*—vivid, lively imagination.

rerum imagines

res cogitatione fictae or *depictae* } creatures of the imagination.

opinionum commenta, ineptiae, monstra, portenta—extravagant fictions of fancy.

animo, mente, cogitatione aliquid comprehendere, complecti—to grasp a thing mentally.

in eam cogitationem incidere—to happen to think of . . .

haec cogitatio subit animum } an idea strikes me.

illud succurrit mihi

mihi in mentem venit alicuius rei—something comes into my mind.

aliquid animo meo obversatur (cf. p. 27, s. v. *oculi*)—a vague notion presents itself to my mind.

aliquem ad eam cogitationem adducere ut—to induce a person to think that . . .

alicuius animum ab aliqua re abducere—to draw away some one's attention from a thing.

cogitationem, animum in aliquid intendere (Acad. 4. 46)—to direct one's attention . . .

omnes cogitationes ad aliquid conferre—to give all one's attention to a thing.

mentem in aliqua re defigere—to fix all one's thoughts on an object.

in cogitatione defixum esse—to be deep in thought.

cogitationes in res humiles abicere (De Amic. 9. 32) (opp. *alte spectare, ad altiora tendere, altum, magnificum, divinum suspicere*)—to study the commonplace.

3. CONCEPTIONS—IDEALS—PERFECTION

notiones animo (menti) insitae, innatae—innate ideas.

*intellegentiae adumbratae*¹ or *incohatae* (De Leg. 1. 22. 59)
—vague, undeveloped ideas.

notionem or *rationem alicuius rei in animo informare* or *animo concipere*—to form a conception, notion of a thing.

absolutus et perfectus—absolutely perfect.

omnibus numeris absolutus (N. D. 2. 13)—perfect in every detail.

ad summum perducere
perficere et absolvere } to bring to the highest perfection.

ad perfectionem, (ad summum) pervenire—to attain perfection.

absolutio et perfectio (not *summa perfectio*)—ideal perfection.

¹ *adumbrare* is a technical term of painting = to make a sketch, outline of an object ; then metaphorically, to merely hint at a thing. Its opposite is *exprimere*, technical term of sculpture, = figuratively, to represent exactly, clearly. It never has the simple meaning "to express."

cogitatione, non re—ideally, not really.

undique expleta et perfecta forma
species optima or *eximia, speci-* } an ideal.
men, also simply species, forma }

comprehensam quandam animo speciem (alicuius rei) habere

—to have formed an ideal notion of a thing.

singularem quandam perfectionis imaginem animo concipere

—to conceive an ideal.

imaginem perfecti oratoris adumbrare—to sketch the ideal
 of an orator.

civitas optima, perfecta Platonis
illa civitas Platonis commenticia } Plato's ideal republic.
illa civitas, quam Plato finxit }

4. OPINION—PREJUDICE—CONJECTURE

in sententia manere, permanere, perseverare, perstare—to
 abide by, persist in one's opinion.

illud, hoc teneo—I abide by this opinion.

a sententia sua discedere
de sententia sua decedere } to give up one's opinion.
(de) sententia desistere }

de sententia deici, depelli, deterreri—to be forced to change
 one's mind.

de sententia aliquem deducere, movere—to make a man
 change his opinion.

aliquem ad suam sententiam perducere or *in suam sententiam adducere*—to win a man over to one's own way of thinking.

ad alicuius sententiam accedere, sententiam alicuius sequi—
 to adopt some one's opinion.

idem sentire (opp. *dissentire ab aliquo*)—to hold the same views.

*sententiam suam aperire*¹—to freely express one's opinions.
sententiam fronte celare, tegere—not to betray one's feelings by one's looks.

*dic quid sentias*²—give me your opinion.

in hac sum sententia, ut . . . putem—I think that . . .

plura in eam sententiam disputare—to discuss a subject more fully on the same lines.

ut mea fert opinio
ut mihi quidem videtur
mea (quidem) sententia } according to my opinion.

quot homines, tot sententiae—many men, many minds.

opiniones falsas animo imbibere
opinionibus falsis imbui } to be imbibing false opinions.

opinionis error—erroneous opinion.

opinio praeiudicata, also simply *opinio* (not *praeiudicium* = a preliminary decision)—prejudice.

opinio confirmata, inveterata—a rooted opinion.

opinionum pravitate infici—to be filled with absurd prejudices.

opinionum commenta (N. D. 2. 2. 5)—chimeras.

monstra or *portenta*—marvellous ideas; prodigies.

coniectura assequi, consequi, aliquid coniectura colligere—to conjecture.

quantum ego coniectura assequor, augūr—as far as I can guess.

coniecturam alicuius rei facere or *capere ex aliqua re*—to infer by comparison, judge one thing by another.

¹ *se aperire* = to betray oneself; cf. *se indicare* (Liv. 2. 12).

² Not *sententiam dicere*, which is used of senators giving their vote; cf. *suffragium ferre*.

de se (ex se de aliis) coniecturam facere—to judge others by oneself.

aliquid in coniectura positum est
aliquid coniectura nititur, con- } it is a matter of conjec-
tinetur (Div. 1. 14. 24) } ture, supposition.

probabilia coniectura sequi—to try to conjecture probabilities.

aliquid mihi nec opinanti, insperanti accidit—a thing has happened contrary to my expectation.

5. TRUTH—ERROR

verum dicere, profiteri—to speak the truth, admit the truth.

*omnia ad veritatem*¹ *dicere*—to be truthful in all one's statements.

veritatis amans, diligens, studiosus—truthful ; veracious.

a vero aversum esse (Catil. 3. 1. 29)—to be averse to truth.

a veritate deflectere, desciscere—to swerve from the truth.

veri videndi, investigandi cupiditas—love of truth.

veri inquisitio atque investigatio—zealous pursuit of truth.

a vero abduci—to be led away from the truth.

proxime ad verum accedere—to be very near the truth.

a vero non abhorrrere }
veri simile esse } to be probable.

haec speciosiora quam veriora sunt—this is more plausible than true.

vera et falsa (a falsis) diiudicare—to distinguish true and false.

¹ *verum* = the truth, concrete ; *veritas* = truth in the abstract.

vera cum falsis confundere—to confuse true with false.

veritas—veracity.

re (vera), reapse (opp. *specie*)—in truth ; really.

in errore versari—to be mistaken.

magno errore teneri
in magno errore versari } to be in gross error, seriously
vehementer errare } misled.

erroribus implicari (Tusc. 4. 27. 58)—to fall into error.

per errorem labi, or simply *labi*—to take a false step.

aliquem in errorem inducere, rapere—to lead a person into error.

errorem animo imbibere—to get a mistaken notion into the mind.

errorem cum lacte nutricis sugere (Tusc. 3. 1. 2)—to imbibe error from one's mother's breasts.

error longe lateque diffusus—a wide-spread error.

errorem tollere
errorem amputare et } to banish an error, do away with a
circumcidere } false impression.

errorem stirpitus extrahere—to totally eradicate false principles.

errorem deponere, corrigere—to amend, correct one's mistake.

alicui errorem demere, eripere, extorquere—to undeceive a person.

nisi fallor
nisi (animus) me fallit } if I am not mistaken.

nisi omnia me fallunt—unless I'm greatly mistaken.

6. CHOICE—DOUBT—SCRUPLE

optionem alicui dare (Acad. 2. 7. 19)—to give a person his choice.

optionem alicui dare, utrum . . . an—to offer a person the alternative of . . . or . . .

in dubium vocare
in dubio ponere } to throw doubt upon a thing.

in dubium venire—to become doubtful.

quod aliquam (magnam) dubitationem habet (Leg. Agr. 1. 4. 11)—a thing which is rather (very) dubious.

dubitatio mihi affertur, inicitur—a doubt arises in my mind.

dubitationem alicui tollere—to relieve a person of his doubts.

aliquid in medio, in dubio relin-
quere (Cael. 20. 48)
aliquid dubium, incertum relin-
quere } to leave a thing undecided.

sine dubio (not *sine ullo dubio*)—without doubt, beyond all doubt.

sine ulla dubitatione—without any hesitation ; without the least scruple.

scrupulum ex animo alicuius evellere (Rosc. Am. 2. 6)—to relieve a man of his scruple.

unus mihi restat scrupulus (Ter. Andr. 5. 4. 37) (cf. too religio, p. 179)—one thing still makes me hesitate.

7. KNOWLEDGE—CERTAINTY—PERSUASION

certo (*certe*) *scio*¹ (Arch. 12. 32)—I know for a fact.

<i>probe scio, non ignoro</i>	}	I know very well.
<i>non sum ignarus, nescius</i>		
(not <i>non sum inscius</i>)		

me non fugit, praeterit—I am not unaware.

<i>quantum scio</i>	}	as far as I know.
<i>quod sciam</i>		

hoc (not *tantum*) *certum est*—this much is certain.

aliquid compertum habere—to know a thing for certain.

illud pro certo affirmare licet—this much I can vouch for.

mihi exploratum est, exploratum (*certum*) *habeo*—I am quite certain on the point.

inter omnes constat—it is a recognised fact.

<i>mihi persuasum est</i> ²	}	I am persuaded, convinced.
<i>mihi persuasi</i>		

<i>sic habeto</i>	}	convince yourself of this; rest assured on this point.
<i>persuade tibi</i>		
<i>velim tibi ita persuadeas</i>		
<i>sic volo te tibi persuadere</i>		

addūcor, ut credam—I am gradually convinced that . . .

non possum adduci, ut (*credam*)—I cannot make myself believe that . . .

ex animi mei sententia (*vid. p. 179*)—according to my strong conviction.

suo iudicio uti—to act in accordance with one's convictions.

¹ With *certe scio*, which is the form Cicero usually employs, the certitude lies in our knowledge, *certum est me scire*; with *certo scire* the certitude lies in the object of our knowledge. *certo* rarely occurs except with *scio*.

² Caesar occasionally uses *persuasum sibi habere*.

8. PLAN—ADVICE—DELIBERATION

consilium capere, inire (*de aliqua re*, with Gen. gerund., with Inf., more rarely *ut*)—to form a plan, make a resolution.

consilio desistere—to give up a project, an intention.

consilium abicere or *deponere*—to let a plan fall through.

a consilio deterreri aliqua re—to be deterred from one's intention by something.

mediocribus consiliis uti—to adopt half-measures.

consilium, sententiam mutare—to alter one's views, intentions.

*suo consilio uti*¹—to go one's own way, proceed independently.

magna moliri—to be busy with ambitious projects.

*consilia cum aliquo communicare*²—(1) to communicate one's plans to some one; (2) to make common cause with a person. Similarly *c. causam, rationem*.

consilia inter se communicare—to take common counsel.

aliquem in or *ad consilium adhibere*—to consult a person, take his advice.

¹ *uti* is similarly used in several phrases, especially with the meaning of having, showing, enjoying, practising, proving, etc., e.g. *uti ventis secundis, adversis; praesenti animo uti*, to show presence of mind; *perpetua felicitate*, to enjoy . . . ; *prudentia, severitate, crudelitate*, to show . . . ; *bona valetudine, prospero fortunae flatu*, to enjoy . . . ; cf. v. 6.

² *communicare* (*aliquid cum aliquo*) means properly to share a thing with some one. From this are developed the two senses—1. to give some one something, e.g. *consilia, laudem, gloriam alicuius rei*; 2. to receive a share of a thing, e.g. *pericula, paupertatem*. "To communicate," i.e. to announce, inform, is represented by *dicere, tradere, narrare, exponere, certiore facere*, etc.

consilium habere (*de aliqua re*)—to deliberate together
(of a number of people).

consultare or *deliberare* (*de aliqua re*)—to deliberate, con-
sider (of individuals).

consiliis arcanis interesse (Liv. 35. 18)—to be present at
secret consultations.

consilium dare alicui }
auctorem esse alicui, ut } to give a person advice.

aliquem consilio (*et re*) *inviare*—to give a person the
advantage of one's advice (and actual support).

consilii mei copiam facio tibi—I put myself at your disposal
as regards advice.

consilium petere ab aliquo—to apply to a person for advice.

consilii inopem esse—to be perplexed.

omnia consilia frigent (Verr. 2. 25)—advice is useless in
this case ; the situation is very embarrassing.

nullo consilio, nulla ratione, temere—without reflection ;
inconsiderately ; rashly.

secum (*cum animo*) *reputare aliquid* }
considerare in, cum animo, secum aliquid } to think over,
agitare (in) mente or *(in) animo aliquid* } consider a
thing.

aliquid cadit in deliberationem (Off. 1. 3. 9)—a subject
becomes matter for reflection.

re diligenter considerata, perpensa }
omnibus rebus circumspectis } after mature delibera-
inīta subductaque ratione } tion.

9. RESOLVE—DESIGN—INTENTION

in animo habeo or *mihi est in animo* c. Inf.—I am resolved ;
it is my intention.

certum (mihi) est—I am determined.

- certum deliberatumque est*
stat mihi sententia (Liv. 21. 30) } I am firmly resolved.
incertus sum, quid consilii capiam—I am undecided . . .
mihi non constat (with indirect question)—I have not
 made up my mind.
propositum est mihi c. Inf.—I intend, propose to . . .
propositum, consilium tenere (opp. *a proposito deterreret*)—
 to abide by one's resolution.
*propositum*¹ *assequi, peragere*—to carry out one's plan.
magna sibi proponere or *magna spectare*—to have a high
 object in view ; to be ambitious.
in incepto or *conatu perstare* }
in proposito susceptoque con- } to persevere in one's resolve.
silio permanere }
incepto or *conatu desistere*—to give up one's project.
parare aliquid—to take measures for . . .
animum inducere c. Inf. (not *in animum inducere*)—to
 persuade oneself to . . .
a me impetrare non possum, ut—I cannot bring myself
 to . . .
descendere ad aliquid, ad omnia (*vid.* note, p. 54)—to con-
 sent to . . ., lend oneself to . . .
descendere ad extrema consilia (Fam. 10. 33. 4)—to have
 recourse to extreme measures.

10. OBJECT—AIM—HESITATION—DELAY

- consilium est* c. Inf. or *ut* }
id sequor, ut } my intention is . . .

¹ In classical prose *propositum* is still semi-adjectival and has not yet acquired all the functions of a substantive ; consequently it cannot be joined to a genitive, an adjective, or a pronoun. Cf. the treatment of *factum, dictum*, etc., in Augustan Latin.

spectare aliquid or *ad aliquid*—to have an object in view.
res eo spectat, ut—the matter tends towards . . ., has
 this object.¹

res spectat ad vim (arma)—there seems a prospect of
 armed violence ; things look like violence.

id quod voluit consecutus est
ad id quod voluit pervenit } he attained his object.

quid tibi vis?—what do you mean to do?

quid hoc sibi vult?
quid hoc rei est? } what is the meaning of this?

eo consilio, ea mente, ut—with the intention of . . .

de industria, dedita opera (opp. *imprudens*)—designedly ;
 intentionally.

*ad id ipsum*²—with this very object.

infecta re (Liv. 9. 32)—to no purpose ; ineffectually.

moram alicui rei afferre, inferre, facere—to retard, delay
 a thing.

in mora alicui esse—to detain a person.

nullam moram interponere, quin (Phil. 10. 1. 1)—to make
 all possible haste to . . .

sine mora or *nulla mora interposita*—without delay.

diem ex die ducere, differre—to put off from one day to
 another.

11. REMEMBRANCE—FORGETFULNESS

memoriâ tenere aliquid
memoriam alicuius rei tenere } to remember a thing per-
 fectly.

¹ Note *Athenae a Persis petuntur*, the object of the Persian invasion is Athens (Nep. Them. 2. 6).

² The aim, tendency of a writing or a poem is *consilium*, *quo liber scriptus est, quo carmen compositum est, or quod quis in libro scribendo secutus est*, not *consilium libri*.

recenti memoria tenere aliquid—to have a vivid recollection of a thing.

<i>memoriâ (multum) valere (opp.)</i>	} to have a good memory.
<i>memoriâ vacillare)</i>	
<i>memorem esse (opp. obliviosum</i>	
<i>esse)</i>	

memoria tanta fuit, ut—he had such an extraordinary memory that . . .

memoriâ labi—to make a slip of the memory.

*memoriae mandare aliquid*¹—to impress on the memory.

ex memoria (opp. *de scripto*)—from memory ; by heart.

memoriter—(1) with good memory ; (2) from personal recollection.

memoria custodire—to keep in mind.

memoriam alicuius rei renovare, revocare (redintegrare)—to recall a thing to one's recollection.

<i>memoriam alicuius rei repetere</i>	} to recall to mind a thing or person.
<i>in memoriam alicuius redire</i>	

in memoriam alicuius redigere, reducere aliquid (not *revocare*)
—to recall a thing to a person's mind.

memoria et recordatio—vivid recollection.

*grata memoria aliquem prosequi*²—to show a thankful appreciation of a person's kindness.

nomen alicuius grato animo prosequi—to think of a person with a grateful sense of his goodness.

memoriam alicuius rei repraesentare (opp. *memoriam alicuius rei deponere, abicere*)—to picture to oneself again.

¹ Distinguish this expression from *ediscere* which = to learn by heart ; also from *memoriae prodere, tradere* = to hand down as tradition (*vid.* p. 110).

² *Prosequi* used figuratively, with an ablative, occurs in several phrases—e.g. *prosequi aliquem honore ; verbis honorificis ; beneficiis, officiis, studiis suis ; omnibus, votis, lacrimis.*

memoriam alicuius rei conservare, retinere—to retain the recollection of a thing.

memoriam alicuius pie inviolateque servare—to show an affectionate regard for a person's memory.

gratam (gratissimam) alicuius memoriam retinere—to retain a (most) pleasant impression of a person.

numquam ex animo meo memoria illius rei discedet—the memory of this will never fade from my mind.

aliquid in memoria nostra penitus insidet—a thing has been vividly impressed on my memory.

<i>memoriam eius nulla umquam</i> <i>delebit (obscurabit) oblivio</i> (Fam. 2. 1)	} nothing will ever make me forgetful of him.
<i>semper memoria eius in (om- nium) mentibus haerebit</i>	

nomen suum posteritati aliqua re commendare, propagare, prodere—to win renown amongst posterity by some act.

memoriam nominis sui immortalitati tradere, mandare, commendare—to immortalise one's name.

<i>post hominum memoriam</i> <i>post homines natos</i>	} within the memory of man.

*memoriae causa, ad (not in) memoriam*¹ (Brut. 16. 62)—in memory of . . .

oblivio alicuius rei me capit—I forget something.

aliquem in oblivionem alicuius rei adducere (pass. *in oblivionem venire*)—to make a person forget a thing.

aliquid excidit e memoria, effluit, excidit ex animo—a thing escapes, vanishes from the memory.

¹ One can also say *monumenti causa*—e.g. *aliquid alicui monumenti causa relinquere*. Cf. such turnings as *alicuius memoriam aliqua re prosequi, celebrare, renovare*.

memoria alicuius rei excidit, abiit, abolevit—the recollection of a thing has been entirely lost.

*obliterari*¹ (Liv. 26. 41)

memoria alicuius rei obscuratur,

obliteratur, evanescit

oblivioni esse, dari

in oblivionem adduci

oblivione obrui, deleri, exstingui

in oblivione iacere (of persons)

} to be forgotten, pass into
oblivion.

aliquid ab oblivione vindicare—to rescue from oblivion.

mementote with Acc. c. Inf.—do not forget.

12. THEORY—PRACTICE—EXPERIENCE

ratione, doctrina (opp. *usu*) *aliquid cognitum habere*—to have a theoretical knowledge of a thing.

ad artem, ad rationem revocare aliquid (De Or. 2. 11. 44)
—to reduce a thing to its theoretical principles;
to apply theory to a thing.

doctrinam ad usum adiungere—to combine theory with practice.

in rebus atque in usu versatum esse—to have had practical experience.

*usu*² *praeditum esse*—to possess experience.

magnum usum in aliqua re habere—to have had great experience in a thing.

multarum rerum usus—varied, manifold experience.

¹ This and the following expressions are useful to express the passive of *oblivisci*.

² Not *experientia*, which in classical prose means attempt, proof.

usu rerum (vitae, vitae communis) edocti scimus
expertus scimus, didicimus
usu cognitum habemus

} we know from experience.

res ipsa, usus rerum (cotidie) docet—everyday experience tells us this.
(rerum) imperitum esse—to have had no experience of the world.
*multa acerba expertus est*¹—he has had many painful experiences.
usus me docuit—experience has taught me.

VII. THE ARTS AND SCIENCES

I. SCIENTIFIC KNOWLEDGE IN GENERAL—LITERATURE

optima studia, bonae, optimae, liberales, ingenuae artes, disciplinae—the sciences; the fine arts.
*litterarum*² *studium* or *tractatio* (not *occupatio*)—the study of belles-lettres; literary pursuits.
homines litterarum studiosi
homines docti

} learned, scientific, literary men.

¹ *experiri* is only used of personal experience.

² *littera* in sing. = letter of the alphabet, e.g. *litteram nullam ad me misit*. In plur. = 1. letters of the alphabet, characters (cf. viii. 9); 2. a letter (*epistola*); 3. writings, books, e.g. *graecae de philosophia litterae*; 4. literature, *graecas litteras discere*; 5. literary pursuits; 6. science; 7. culture, erudition, learning, *erant in eo plurimae litterae, neque eae vulgares, sed interiores quaedam et reconditae*.

artium studia or *artes vigent* (not *florent*)—learning, scientific knowledge is flourishing.

litterae iacent, *neglectae iacent*¹—scholarship, culture, literature is at a low ebb.

litteras colere—to be engaged in the pursuit of letters.

litteras amplecti
litteras adamasse (only in
 perf. and plup.) } to be an enthusiastic devotee
 of letters.

in studio litterarum versari—to be engaged in literary pursuits.

in aliquo litterarum genere versari—to be engaged in any branch of study.

summo studio in litteris versari—to be an ardent student of . . .

se totum litteris tradere, dedere—to devote oneself entirely to literature.

se totum in litteras or *se litteris abdere*—to be quite engrossed in literary studies.

in litteris elaborare (De Sen. 8. 26)—to apply oneself very closely to literary, scientific work.

in litteris acquiescere or *conquiescere*—to find recreation in study.

aetatem in litteris ducere, agere—to devote one's life to science, study.

omne (otiosum) tempus in litteris consumere—to devote all one's leisure moments to study.

omne studium in litteris collocare, ad litteras conferre—to employ all one's energies on literary work.

¹ *iacēre* metaphorically is used not only of things neglected and abandoned, but of persons (cf. *frigere*) who have lost all their political influence.

optimarum artium studio incensum esse—to be interested in, have a taste for culture.

litterarum studio trahi
trahi, ferri ad litteras } to feel an attraction for study.

litterarum studia remittere—to relax one's studies.

intermissa studia revocare—to resume one's studies.

*primis (ut dicitur)*¹ or *primoribus labris gustare* or *attingere*

litteras—to have a superficial knowledge, a smattering of literature, of the sciences.

litterae—literature.

litterae ac monumenta, or simply *monumenta*—written records; documents.

*litterae latinae*²—Roman literature.

clarissima litterarum lumina—shining lights in the literary world.

graecis litteris studere—to study Greek literature.

multum (mediocriter) in graecis litteris versari—to be well (slightly) acquainted with Greek literature.

2. LEARNING—ERUDITION

vir or *homo doctus, litteratus*—a man of learning; a scholar; a savant.

vir doctissimus—a great scholar.

vir perfecte planeque eruditus—a man of profound erudition.

vir omni doctrina eruditus—a man perfect in all branches of learning.

¹ Cf. Pro Caelio 12, 28 *extremis ut dicitur digitis attingere*.

² *latinus* is only used of language and literature, *Romanus* of nationality.

multi viri docti, or *multi et ii docti* (not *multi docti*)—many learned men ; many scholars.

omnes docti, quivis doctus, doctissimus quisque—all learned men.

nemo doctus—no man of learning.

nemo mediocriter doctus—no one with any pretence to education.

latinis litteris or *latine doctus*—acquainted with the Latin language.

*bene*¹ *latine doctus* or *sciens*—a good Latin scholar.

doctrina abundare (De Or. 3. 16. 59)—to be a man of great learning.

a. doctrina mediocriter instructum esse—to have received only a moderate education.

*doctrina exquisita, subtilis, elegans*²—sound knowledge ; scholarship.

doctrina recondita—profound erudition.

studia, quae in reconditis artibus versantur (De Or. 1. 2. 8)—abstruse studies.

magnam doctrinae speciem prae se ferre—to pass as a man of great learning.

vita umbratilis (*vid.* p. 98)—the contemplative life of a student.

¹ For the use of adverbs to modify adjectives and other adverbs *vid.* Nägelsbach Lat. Stil. p. 278 ; cf. *bene multi, bene mane, bene penitus* (Verr. 2. 70. 169), *impie ingratus* (Tusc. 5. 2. 6) etc. Such combinations are especially frequent in Tacitus, Velleius, Seneca, and Quintilian. For *latine* by itself cf. Cic. Opt. Gen. 4 *latine, id est pure et emendate, loqui*. If the style is to be criticised, adverbs can be added—e.g. *bene, perbene, pessime, eleganter*, etc., cf. vii. 7.

² Not *solida*, which means properly entire, massive—e.g. *marmor solidum, crateres auro solidi*, then metaph. e.g. —*solida laus, utilitas*.

litterarum scientiam (only in sing.) *habere*—to possess literary knowledge.

scientiam alicuius rei consequi } to acquire knowledge of a
scientia comprehendere aliquid } subject.

penitus percipere et comprehendere aliquid (De Or. 1. 23. 108)—to have a thorough grasp of a subject.

scientia augere aliquem—to enrich a person's knowledge.

multa cognita, percepta habere,
multa didicisse
multarum rerum cognitione im-
butum esse (opp. *litterarum*
 or *eruditionis expertem esse*
 or [*rerum*] *rudem esse*) } to be well-informed, erudite.

3. CULTURE—CIVILISATION

animus, ingenium excolere (not *colere*)—to cultivate the mind.

animi, ingenii cultus (not *cultura*)—mental culture.

optimis studiis or *artibus, optimarum artium studiis eruditum esse*
litteras scire } to have received a liberal education.

litterae interiores et reconditae, artes reconditae—profound scientific education.

sunt in illo, ut in homine Romano, multae litterae (De Sen.

4. 12)—for a Roman he is decidedly well educated.

litteris leviter imbutum or *tinctum esse*—to have received a superficial education.

omni vita atque victu excultum atque expolitum esse (Brut. 25. 95)—to have attained to a high degree of culture.

omnis cultus et humanitatis ex-
*pertem esse*¹
ab omni cultu et humanitate
longe abesse (B. G. I. I. 3) } to be quite uncivilised.
homines, gentem a fera agrestique vita ad humanum cultum
civilemque deducere (De Or. I. 8. 33)—to civilise
 men, a nation.

4. EDUCATION—INSTRUCTION—SCHOOL—PROFESSION

liberaliter, ingenue, bene educari—to receive a liberal education.
severa disciplina contineri—to be brought up under strict discipline.
aliquem ad humanitatem informare or *instituere*—to teach a person refinement.
mores alicuius corrigere—to improve a person.
in viam reducere aliquem—to bring a person back to the right way.
in viam redire—to return to the right way.
litteras discere ab aliquo—to be educated by some one.
institutui or *erudiri ab aliquo*
disciplina alicuius uti, magistro
aliquo uti } to receive instruction from some one.
e disciplina alicuius profectum esse—to be brought up in some one's school.
puerum alicui erudiendum or *in disciplinam tradere*—to entrust a child to the tuition of . . .
operam dare or simply *se dare alicui, se tradere in discip-*

¹ Not *incultum esse*, which refers only to external appearance.

linam alicuius, se conferre, se applicare ad aliquem—
to become a pupil, disciple of some one.

multum esse cum aliquo (Fam. 16. 21)—to enjoy close
intercourse with . . . (of master and pupil).

ludus (*discendi* or *litterarum*)—an elementary school.

schola—a school for higher education.

scholam frequentare—to go to a school.

disciplina (*institutio*) *puerilis* (not *liberorum*)—the teaching
of children.

pueros elementa (*prima*) *docere*—to teach children the
rudiments.

primis litterarum elementis imbui—to receive the first ele-
ments of a liberal education.

<p><i>doctrinae, quibus aetas puerilis</i> <i>impertiri solet</i> (Nep. Att. 1. 2) <i>artes, quibus aetas puerilis ad</i> <i>humanitatem informari solet</i></p>	}	<p>the usual subjects taught to boys.</p>
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---	-----------------------------------------------

erudire aliquem artibus, litteris (but *erudire aliquem in*
iure civili, in re militari)—to teach some one
letters.

natum, factum esse ad aliquid (*faciendum*)—to be born for
a thing, endowed by nature for it.

adversante et repugnante natura or *invitâ Minervâ* (*ut aiunt*)
aliquid facere (Off. 1. 31. 110)—to do a thing which
is not one's vocation, which goes against the
grain

crassa or *pingui Minerwa* (proverb.)—with no intelligence
or skill.

calcaria alicui adhibere, admoveere ; stimulos alicui admoveere
—to spur, urge a person on.

frenos adhibere alicui—to restrain some one.

bona indole (always in sing.) } to be gifted, talented (not
praeditum esse } *praeditum esse* by itself.
ingenio valere }

summo ingenio praeditum esse—to possess rich mental endowments.

in aliqua re progressus facere, proficere, progredi—to make progress in a subject.

aliquid efficere, consequi in aliqua re (De Or. 1. 33. 152)—to obtain a result in something.

adulescens alios bene de se sperare iubet, bonam spem ostendit
or alii de adolescente bene sperare possunt—he is a young man of great promise.

adulescens bonae (egregiae) spei—a promising youth.

magna est exspectatio ingenii tui—we expect a great deal from a man of your calibre.

*desudare in scholae umbra or umbraculis*¹—to exert oneself in the schools.

*genus vitae (vivendi) or aetatis degendae deligere*²—to choose a career, profession.

viam vitae ingredi (Flacc. 42. 105)—to enter upon a career.

philosophiam, medicinam profiteri } to be a philosopher,
se philosophum, medicum (esse) } physician by profes-
profiteri } sion.

qui ista profitentur—men of that profession.

¹ Cf. *umbra, umbracula* (-orum), and *umbratilis* (vid. vii. 2, *vita umbratilis*), used of the retired life of a savant as opposed to *sol, lux ori* or *forensis*. Cf. De Legg. 3. 6. 14 *Phalereus ille Demetrius mirabiliter doctrinam ex umbraculis eruditorum otioque non modo in solem atque in pulverem sed in ipsum discrimen aciemque produxit*.

² The *locus classicus* on the choice of a profession is De Officiis 1. 32. 115-122.

5. EXAMPLE—PATTERN—PRECEDENT

exemplum clarum, praeclarum
exemplum luculentum
exemplum illustre

} a good,¹ brilliant example ;
 } a striking example.

exemplum magnum, grande—a weighty example, precedent.

exemplum afferre
exemplo uti

} to quote an example.

*aliquem (aliquid) exempli causa*² *ponere, proferre, nominare, commemorare*—to cite a person or thing as an example.

aliquid exemplis probare, comprobare, confirmare—to quote precedents for a thing.

aliquid exemplis ostendere—to demonstrate by instances.

exempla petere, repetere a rerum gestarum memoria or *historiarum (annalium, rerum gestarum) monumentis*—to borrow instances from history.

exempla a rerum Romanarum (Graecarum) memoria petita
 —examples taken from Roman (Greek) history.

multa exempla in unum (locum) colligere—to collect, accumulate instances.

ex infinita exemplorum copia unum (pauca) sumere, decerpere (eligere)—to choose one from a large number of instances.

¹ Not *bonum exemplum*, which means an example morally good for us to follow.

² “For example” must not be translated by *exempli causa*, which is only used in complete sentences with such verbs as *ponere, afferre, proferre, nominare*. *verbi causa (gratia)* = “for instance,” “we will say,” usually refers to a single expression, e.g. *quid dicis igitur? miserum fuisse verbi causa M. Crassum?* (Tusc. I. 4. 12). Often examples are introduced by such words as *ut, velut, in his*, etc., e.g. *bestiae quae gignuntur in terra, veluti crocodili* (N. D. 2. 48. 124).

a Socrate exemplum virtutis petere, repetere—to quote Socrates as a model of virtue.

similitudines afferre—to cite parallel cases.

auctore aliquo uti ad aliquid
auctorem aliquem habere ali- } to have as authority for a
cuius rei } thing.

auctoritatem alicuius sequi—to be guided by another's example.

auctoritas et exemplum (Balb. 13. 31)—standard and pattern.

sibi exemplum alicuius proponere ad imitandum or simply
sibi aliquem ad imitandum proponere—to set up some one as one's ideal, model.

sibi exemplum sumere ex aliquo or *exemplum capere de aliquo*—to take a lesson from some one's example.

ad exemplum alicuius se conformare—to shape one's conduct after another's model.

exemplum edere, prodere } to set an example.
exemplo esse }

exemplum in aliquo or *in aliquem statuere* } to inflict an exemplary punishment on some one.
exemplum (severitatis) edere in aliquo (Q. Fr. 1. 2. 2. 5) }

bene (male) praecipere alicui—to inculcate good (bad) principles.

praecepta dare, tradere de aliqua re—to give advice, directions, about a matter.

ad praeciendi rationem delābi (Q. Fr. 1. 1. 6. 18)—to adopt a didactic tone.

aliquid in animo haeret, penitus insedit or *infixum est*—a thing is deeply impressed on the mind.

aliquid animo mentique penitus mandare (Catil. 1. 11. 27)—
to impress a thing on one's memory, mind.
demittere aliquid in pectus or *in pectus animumque suum*—
to take a thing to heart.
hoc verbum alte descendit in pectus alicuius—what he said
made a deep impression on . . .

6. PHILOSOPHY

se conferre ad philosophiam, ad philosophiae or *sapientiae
studium* (Fam. 4. 3. 4)—to devote oneself to philo-
sophy.
animum appellere or *se applicare ad philosophiam*—to apply
oneself to the study of philosophy.
philosophiae (sapientiae) studio teneri (Acad. 1. 2. 4)—to be
enamoured of philosophy.
in portum philosophiae confugere—to take refuge in
philosophy.
in sinum philosophiae compelli—to be driven into the arms
of philosophy.
philosophia (neglecta) iacet (*vid.* p. 92, note)—philosophy
is neglected, at low ebb.
philosophiam latinis litteris illustrare (Acad. 1. 1. 3)—to
write expositions of philosophy in Latin.
Ciceronis de philosophia libri—Cicero's philosophical writ-
ings.
decreta, inventa philosophorum—the tenets, dogmas of
philosophers.
quae in philosophia tractantur—philosophical subjects.
praecepta philosophorum (penitus) percepta habere—to be well
acquainted with the views of philosophers.
illae sententiae evanuerunt—those views are out of date.

illae sententiae iam pridem explosae et eiectae sunt (Fin. 5. 8.

23)—those ideas have long ago been given up.

schola, disciplina, familia; secta—a sect, school of thought.

sectam alicuius sequi (Brut.

31. 120)

disciplinam alicuius profiteri

} to be a follower, disciple of
some one.

qui sunt a Platone or *a Platonis disciplina; qui profecti sunt*

a Platone; Platonici—disciples of Plato, Platonists.

Solo, unus de septem (illis)—Solon, one of the seven sages.

Pythagorae doctrina longe lateque fluxit (Tusc. 4. 1. 2)—

Pythagoras' principles were widely propagated.

scholas habere, explicare (Fin. 2. 1. 1)—to give lectures.

scholis interesse—to attend lectures.

tradere (aliquid de aliqua re)—to teach.

audire Platonem, auditorem esse Platonis—to attend Plato's lectures.

7. THE PARTS OF PHILOSOPHY

*physica*¹ (-orum) (Or. 34. 119); *philosophia naturalis*—
physics; natural philosophy.

dialectica (-ae or -orum) (pure Latin *disserendi ratio et scientia*)—logic, dialectic.

disserendi praecepta tradere—to teach logic.

disserendi elegantia—logical minuteness, precision.

disserendi subtilitas (De Or. 1. 1. 68)—dialectical nicety.

disserendi spinæ (Fin. 4. 28. 79)—subtleties of logic;
dilemmas.

disserendi peritus et artifex

} an accomplished dialectician.
homo in dialecticis versatissimus

¹ Cf. Acad. 1. 5. 19 *philosophandi ratio triplex; una de vita et moribus, altera de natura et rebus occultis, tertia de disserendo.*

disserendi artem nullam habere—to know nothing of logic.
*dialecticis ne imbutum*¹ *quidem esse*—to be ignorant of
 even the elements of logic.

ratione, eleganter (opp. *nulla ratione, ineleganter, confuse*)
disponere aliquid—to arrange on strictly logical principles.

<i>philosophia, quae est de vita et moribus</i> (Acad. i. 5. 19)	} moral science ; ethics.
<i>philosophia, in qua de bonis rebus et malis, deque hominum vita et moribus disputatur</i>	

philosophia, quae in rerum contemplatione versatur, or quae artis praeceptis continetur—theoretical, speculative philosophy.

philosophia,² *quae in actione versatur*—practical philosophy.
omnes philosophiae loci—the whole domain of philosophy.

8. SYSTEM—METHOD—PRINCIPLES

ratio ; disciplina, ratio et disciplina ; ars—system.

<i>ad artem redigere aliquid</i>	} to systematise.
<i>ad rationem, ad artem et praecepta</i>	
<i>revocare aliquid</i> (De Or. i. 41)	

arte conclusum esse—to have been reduced to a system.

ratio et doctrina—systematic, methodical knowledge.

artificio et via tradere aliquid—to give a scientific explanation of a thing.

¹ *imbuere* is properly to give the first touch to, tinge, bathe, e.g. *gladii sanguine imbuti*. Metaph. it = (1) to fill with, e.g. *religione, pietate, superstitione, crudelitate* ; (2) to teach, initiate, e.g. *animum honestis artibus*, and is used especially of a superficial knowledge.

² Cf. Sen. Ep. 25. 10 *philosophia activa*.

artificiose redigere aliquid
ad rationis praecepta accommo-
dare aliquid } to treat with scientific
 exactness ; to classify.

totam rationem evertere (pass. *iacet tota ratio*)—to upset the whole system.

ratione et via, via et ratione progredi, disputare (Or. 33. 116)
 to proceed, carry on a discussion logically.

novam rationem ingredi—to enter on a new method.

a certa ratione proficisci—to be based on a sound principle.

a falsis principiis proficisci—to start from false premises.

ad philosophorum or *philosophandi rationes revocare aliquid*
 —to deal with a subject on scientific principles.

perpetuitas et constantia (Tusc. 5. 10. 31)—logical consistency.

9. SPECIES—DEFINITION—CLASSIFICATION— CONNECTION

*partes*¹ *generibus subiectae sunt*—the species is subordinate to the genus.

genus univcrsum in species certas partiri et dividere (Or. 33. 117)—to analyse a general division into its specific parts.

genere, non numero or *magnitudine differre*—to differ qualitatively not quantitatively.

¹ Cf. Cic. De Or. 1. 42 for the definition. *genus autem id est, quod sui similes communione quadam, specie autem differentes, duas aut plures complectitur partes. partes autem sunt, quae generibus eis ex quibus manant subiciuntur; omniaque quae sunt vel generum vel partium nomina, definitionibus, quam vim habeant, est exprimendum. est enim definitio rerum earum, quae sunt eius rei propriae, quam definire volumus, brevis et circumscripta quaedam explicatio.*

spinae partiendi et definiendi (Tusc. 5. 8. 22)—minute, captious subdivisions and definitions.

rem (res) definire—to define a thing.

a definitione proficisci—to start from a definition.

involutae rei notitiam definiendo aperire (Or. 33. 116)—to make an obscure notion clear by means of definition.

sub metum subiectum esse—to be comprised under the term “fear.”

constituere, quid et quale sit, de quo disputetur—to determine the nature and constitution of the subject under discussion.

in ordinem redigere aliquid—to systematise, classify a thing.

conexum et aptum esse inter se—to be closely connected with each other.

cohaerere, coniunctum esse cum aliqua re—to be closely connected with a thing.

arte (artissime) coniunctum esse } to be very intimately re-
apte (aptissime) cohaerere } lated.

continuatio seriesque rerum, ut alia ex alia nexa et omnes inter se aptae colligataeque sint (N. D. 1. 4. 9)—systematic succession, concatenation.

diffusum, dissipatum esse—to have no coherence, connection.

confusum, perturbatum esse—to be confused.

rem dissolutam conglutinare, coagmentare—to reunite disconnected elements.

10. PROOF—REFUTATION

*argumentum*¹ *firmum, magnum*—a strong, striking proof.

argumentum afferre—to bring forward a proof.

argumentum immortalitatis afferre (not *pro*)—to quote an argument in favour of immortality.

argumentum afferre, quo animos immortales esse demonstratur
—to bring forward a proof of the immortality of the soul.

argumento huic rei est, quod—a proof of this is that . . .

aliquid planum facere (Ad Herenn. 2. 5)—to demonstrate, make a thing clear.

aliquid alicui probare (or c. Acc. c. Inf.)—to prove one's point to a person's satisfaction.

argumentis confirmare, comprobare, evincere aliquid (or c. Acc. c. Inf.)—to prove a thing indisputably.

argumentum ducere, sumere ex aliqua re or *petere ab aliqua re*
—to derive an argument from a thing.

argumentum premere (not *urgere*)—to persist in an argument, press a point.

loci (τόποι) *argumentorum* (De Or. 2. 162)—the points on which proofs are based; the grounds of proof.

argumenta refellere, confutare—to refute arguments.

*rationem*¹ *afferre* (Verr. 3. 85. 195)—to bring forward an argument (based on common-sense).

11. CONCLUSION—HYPOTHESIS—INFERENCE

concludere, colligere, efficere, cogere ex aliqua re—to draw a conclusion from a thing.

¹ *argumentum*=a proof resting on facts; *ratio*=an argument drawn from the general reasonableness of the proposition.

acute, subtiliter concludere—to draw a subtle inference.

ratio or *rationis conclusio efficit*—the conclusion proves that . . .

rationcinatio, ratio—the syllogism ; reasoning.

*prima*¹ (*superiora*) ; *consequentia* (Fin. 4. 19. 54)—premises ; consequences.

conclusiuncula fallax or *captio*—a fallacious argument ; sophism.

positum est a nobis primum (c. Acc. c. Inf.)—we start by presupposing that . . .

hoc posito—on this supposition, hypothesis.

hoc probato consequens est—it follows from what we have shown.

sequitur (not *ex quo seq.*) *ut* } it follows from this that . . .
ex quo, unde, hinc efficitur ut }

12. DEBATE—CONTROVERSY

disputatio, quaestio—systematic, scientific discussion.

*disputare*² (*de aliqua re, ad aliquid*)—to discuss, investigate a subject scientifically.

subtiliter disputare—to thoroughly discuss.

in utramque partem, in contrarias partes disputare (De Or. 1. 34)—to discuss both sides of a question.

in nullam partem disputare—to say nothing either for or against an argument.

¹ In a syllogism the technical term for the major premise is *propositio* or *propositio maior* ; for the minor, *propositio minor* ; for the conclusion, *conclusio*.

² *disputare*=to discuss, considering the arguments *pro* and *con*, used of a number of people with different opinions. *disserere de aliqua re*=to discourse on a matter for the benefit of those present ; but in both cases the substantive is *disputatio*.

non repugno—I have nothing to say against it.

pertinacem (opp. *clementem*) *esse in disputando*—to be dogmatic ; positive.

opponere alicui aliquid—to object, to adduce in contradiction.

dare, concedere aliquid—to grant, admit a thing.

sumere (opp. *reicere*) *aliquid*—to assume a thing.

tenere aliquid ; stare in aliqua re—to insist on a point.

obtinere aliquid—to maintain one's assertion, prove oneself right.

in controversia (*contentione*) *esse, versari* } to be at variance
in controversiam cadere } with.

in controversiam vocare, adducere aliquid—to make a thing the subject of controversy.

in controversiam vocari, adduci, venire (De Or. 2. 72. 291)
 —to be contested, become the subject of debate.

in controversia relinquere aliquid—to leave a point undecided.

controversiam (*contentionem*) *habere cum aliquo*—to maintain a controversy with some one.

in contentione ponitur, utrum . . . an—it is a debated point whether . . . or . . .

id, de quo agitur or *id quod cadit in controversiam*—the point at issue.

controversiam sedare, dirimere, componere, tollere—to put an end to, settle a dispute.

controversiam diiudicare—to decide a debated question.

transigere aliquid cum aliquo—to come to an understanding with a person.

res mihi tecum est—I have a point to discuss with you.

sine (ulla) controversia—indisputably ; incontestably.

hoc est a (pro) me—this goes to prove what I say.

res ipsa docet—the very facts of the case show this.

res ipsa (pro me apud te) loquitur—the matter speaks for itself.

res confecta est—the question is settled, finished.

13. AGREEMENT—CONTRADICTION

consentire, idem sentire cum aliquo—to agree with a person.

dissentire, dissidere ab or *cum aliquo*—to disagree with a person.

omnes (uno ore) in hac re consentiunt—all agree on this point.

una et consentiens vox est—all are unanimous.

una voce ; uno ore

uno, communi, summo or *omnium* } unanimously.
consensu (Tusc. 1. 15. 35)

re concinere, verbis discrepare—to agree in fact but not in word.

hoc convēnit inter nos—we have agreed on this point.

hoc mihi tecum convēnit (Att. 6. 1. 14)—I agree with you there.

quī convēnit?—how is this consistent? how are we to reconcile this . . . ?

summa est virorum doctissimorum consensio (opp. *dissensio*)
 —the learned are most unanimous in . . .

constantia (opp. *inconstantia*) (Tusc. 5. 11. 32)—consistency.

inter se pugnare or *repugnare*—to be mutually contradictory.

secum pugnare (without *sibi*); *sibi*
repugnare (of things) } to contradict oneself,
a se dissidere or *sibi non constare* } be inconsistent.
 (of persons)
pugnantia loqui (Tusc. i. 7. 13)—to make contradictory,
 inconsistent statements.
dicere contra aliquem or *aliquid* (not *contradicere alicui*)—
 to contradict some one.

14. PARTICULAR SCIENCES

(HISTORY, MYTHOLOGY, CHRONOLOGY, GEOGRAPHY,
 MATHEMATICS, NATURAL SCIENCE, ASTRONOMY.)

*res Romanae*¹ } Roman history (*i.e.* the events in
res gestae Romanorum } it).

historia—history (as a science).

*historia Romana*² or *rerum Romanarum historia*—Roman
 history (*i.e.* the exposition, representation of it by
 writers).

memoria rerum Romanarum—Roman history (as tradition).

historiam (-as) *scribere*—to write a history.

res populi Romani perscribere—to write a history of
 Rome.

¹ But *res Romana*=the Roman power, Rome.

² *historia* has several different senses. (1) The narration, exposition of the facts (*res gestae*, *res*), cf. *rerum exemplum*, historic precedent; *res facta*, historic fact. (2) Historical composition, e.g. *historiam scribere*, *historia graeca*=either a history written in Greek or a history of Greece (*rerum graecarum historia*); *historia latina*, history written in Latin; *historia romana* or *rerum romanarum historia*=a history of Rome. (3) A place famous in history, e.g. *quacunque ingredimur, in aliqua historia pedem ponimus*. In the plural *historiae* means specially histories, anecdotes (*narratiunculae*), memoirs, e.g. *Taciti historiae*.

*rerum scriptor*¹
rerum auctor (as authority) } an historian.
*evolvere historias, litterarum (veterum annalium) monu-
 menta*—to study historical records, read history.
*memoriae traditum est, memoriae (memoria) proditum
 est* (without *nobis*)—tradition, history tells us.
tradunt, dicunt, ferunt—they say; it is commonly
 said.

*accepimus*²—we know; we have been told.
historiae prodiderunt (without *nobis*)—history has handed
 down to us.
apud rerum scriptores scriptum videmus, scriptum est—we
 read in history.
duplex est memoria de aliqua re—a twofold tradition pre-
 vails on this subject.

rerum veterum memoria
memoria vetus (Or. 34. 120)
veterum annales
veterum annalium monumenta
antiquitatis memoria } ancient history.
recentioris aetatis memoria—modern history.
memoria huius aetatis (horum
temporum) } the history of our own
nostra memoria (Cael. 18. 43) } times; contemporary
 history.
*omnis memoria, omnis memoria aetatum, temporum,
 civitatum or omnium rerum, gentium, temporum,
 saeculorum memoria*—universal history.

¹ *historicus* means an erudite student of history, one engaged on historical research. As an adjective its use in Cicero is limited, being only used when opposed to *oratorius*, e.g. *genus historicum*, historic style (Brut. 83. 286).

² *scimus, cognovimus* (=we know by experience) are not used of historical knowledge.

memoriam annalium or *temporum replicare*—to consult history.

*aetas heroica*¹ (Tusc. 5. 3. 7) } the mythical period ;
tempora heroica (N. D. 3. 21. 54) } the heroic age.

fabulae, historia fabularis—mythology.

repetere ab ultima (extrema, prisca) antiquitate (vetustate),
ab heroicis temporibus—to go back to the remote ages.

ut a fabulis ad facta veniamus—to pass from myth to history.

historicorum fide contestata memoria—historic times.

historiae, rerum fides—historic truth.

narrare aliquid ad fidem historiae—to give a veracious and historic account of a thing.

res historiae fide comprobata—an acknowledged historical fact.

incorrupta rerum fides—genuine historical truth.

ad historiam (scribendam) se conferre or *se applicare*—to devote oneself to writing history.

homo in historia diligens—a conscientious historian.

memoriam rerum gestarum (rerum Romanarum) tenere—to be well versed in Roman history.

domestica (externa) nosse—to be acquainted with the history of one's own land.

temporum ratio, descriptio, ordo—chronology.

temporum ordinem servare } to observe the chronological
servare et notare tempora } order of events.

res temporum ordine servato narrare—to narrate events in the order of their occurrence.

¹ *heroicus* only of time. *herous*=epic, e.g. *versus herous* (De Or. 3. 49. 191)=a dactylic hexameter ; *pes herous* a dactyl ; “epic” of other things is usually *epicus*, e.g. *carmen epicum* ; *poetae epici*, or *epici* alone. For “heroic” of an action, cf. *praeclarum atque divinum factum* ; *factum illustre et gloriosum*, etc.

temporibus errare (Phil. 2. 9. 23)—to make a chronological mistake.

ad temporum rationem aliquid revocare—to calculate the date of an event.

diligentem esse in exquirendis temporibus—to be exact in calculating dates.

terrarum or regionum descriptio (*geographia*)—geography.

Africae situm paucis exponere—to give a brief exposition of the geography of Africa.

regionum terrestrium aut maritimarum scientia—geographical knowledge.

mathematica (-ae) or *geometria* (-ae), *geometrica* (-orum) (Tusc. 1. 24. 57)—mathematics.

mathematicorum ratione concludere aliquid—to draw a mathematical conclusion.

formas (not *figuras*) *geometricas describere*—to draw geometrical figures.

se conferre ad naturae investigationem—to devote oneself to the study of a natural science.

astrologia (pure Latin *sidera*, *caelestia*)—astronomy.

spectator siderum, rerum caelestium or *astrologus*¹—an astronomer.

*arithmetica*² (-orum)
numeri (-orum) } arithmetic.

¹ It is only in later Latin after *astrologus* had acquired the meaning of astrologer, magician, that *astronomus* came to be used (=astronomer).

² In Cicero always neut. plur., e.g. *in arithmeticiis satis versatus*; later writers use the fem. sing. The pure Latin word is *numeri*, cf. De Fin. 1. 21. 72 *an ille se, ut Plato, in musicis, geometria, numeris, astris contereret?* So De Fin. 5. 29. 87 *cur Plato Aegyptum peragravit, ut a sacerdotibus barbaris numeros et caelestia acciperet?* Cf. Nägelsb. Lat. Stil. p. 46.

bis bina quot sint non didicisse—to be absolutely ignorant of arithmetic.

15. ART IN GENERAL

artis opus ; opus arte factum or *perfectum*—a work of art.
opus summo artificio factum } a master-piece of classical
opus omnibus numeris absolutum } work.

artem exercere—to follow an artistic profession, practise an art.

artem tradere, docere—to teach an art.

artem profiteri—to profess an art.

artium (liberalium) studium, or simply *studium*—a taste for the fine arts.

artis praecepta, or also simply *ars*—the rules of art ; aesthetics.

(*artis, artium*) *intellegens, peritus*¹ (opp. *idiota*, a layman) a connoisseur ; a specialist.

existimator (doctus, intellegens, acerrimus)—a (competent, intelligent, subtle) critic.

in existimantium arbitrium venire (Brut. 24. 92)—to come before the tribunal of the critics.

iudicium facere—to criticise.

sensum, iudicium habere—to be a man of taste.

elegantia in illo est—he possesses sound judgment in matters of taste.

iudicium subtile, elegans, exquisitum, intellegens—good taste ; delicate perception.

iudicium acuere—to cultivate one's powers of criticism.

¹ *idiota*=properly uninitiated, not the same as *rudis, indoctus, imperitus*.

abhorrere ab artibus (opp. *delectari artibus*)—to have no taste for the fine arts.

*veritatem*¹ *imitari* (Div. I. 13. 23)—(1) to make a lifelike, natural representation of a thing (used of the artist); (2) to be lifelike (of a work of art).

in omni re vincit imitationem veritas—in everything nature defies imitation.

aliquid ad verum exprimere—to make a copy true to nature.

morum ac vitae imitatio—a lifelike picture of everyday life.

aliquid e vita ductum est—a thing is taken from life.

16. POETRY—MUSIC—PAINTING—SCULPTURE

poëma condere, facere, componere } to write poetry.
versus facere, scribere

carmina, versus fundere (De Or. 3. 50)—to write poetry with facility.

carmen epicum—epic poetry.

poëta epicus—an epic, heroic poet.

poësis scaenica—dramatic poetry.

poëta scaenicus—a dramatic poet.

scriptor tragoediarum, comoediarum, also (*poëta*) *tragicus, comicus*²—a writer of tragedy, comedy.

*scriptor fabularum*³—a writer of fables.

¹ *veritas* means not merely truth (opp. *mendacium*), but also reality (opp. *opinio, imitatio*). Thus we often find the combination *res et veritas ipsa* (Tusc. 5. 5. 13), *natura rerum et ipsa veritas*.

² *tragicus, comicus* as adjectives = occurring in tragedy, comedy—e.g. *Orestes tragicus*; *senes comici*. Comic in the ordinary sense = *ridiculus*, cf. *homo ridiculus*.

³ Not *fabulator*, which = a gossip, teller of anecdotes.

divino quodam instinctu concitari, ferri (Div. 1. 31. 66)—to feel inspired.

divino quodam spiritu inflatus or *tactus*—inspired.

carmen, versum agere—to recite a poem, line with appropriate action.

carmen recitare—to read a piece of verse with expression.

carmen pronuntiare—to recite a piece of verse (without gestures).

carmen inconditum—a rough poem ; an extempore effusion.

se conferre ad poësis studium—to devote oneself to poetry.

poëtica laude florere—to be distinguished as a poet.

poësis genus ad Romanos transferre—to transplant to Rome one of the branches of poesy.

<i>alicuius laudes versibus persequi</i>	} to sing the praises of some one (not <i>canere</i> <i>alicquem</i>).
<i>alicuius laudes (virtutes) canere</i>	

alicuius res gestas versibus ornare, celebrare—to celebrate some one's exploits in song.

ut ait Homerus—as Homer sings (not *canit*).

numerus poëtice vinctus—poetical rhythm.

*artem musicam*¹ *discere, tractare*—to learn, study music.

nervorum et tiliarum cantus—instrumental music.

vocum et fidium (nervorum) cantus—vocal and instrumental music.

docere aliquem fidibus—to teach some one to play a stringed instrument.

fidibus discere (De Sen. 8. 26)—to learn to play a stringed instrument.

fidibus canere—to play on the lyre.

pellere nervos in fidibus—to strike the strings of the lyre.

¹ *musica* (-orum) is also used for music, cf. *in musicis se conterere*.

tibias inflare
tibiis or *tibiā canere* } to play the flute.

ad tibiam or *ad tibicinem canere*—to sing to a flute accompaniment.

(*homo*) *symphoniacus*—a singer, member of a choir.

symphōnīa canit (Verr. 3. 44. 105)—the orchestra is playing.

*acroāma*¹—a professional performer.

modi (De Or. 1. 42. 187)—the melody.

modos facere—to compose, put to music.

numerus, numeri—the tune; rhythm.

numerosa cadere—to have a rhythmical cadence.

ars pingendi, pictura (De Or. 2. 16. 69)—the art of painting.

ars fingendi—the art of sculpture.

signa et tabulae (pictae)—statues and pictures.

simulacrum e marmore facere—to make a marble statue.

*statuas*² *inscribere* (Verr. 2. 69. 167)—to put an inscription on statues.

17. THE DRAMA

ars ludicra (De Or. 2. 20. 84)—the dramatic art.

fabula, ludus scaenicus—the piece; the play.

argumentum—the plot of the piece.

actio—the treatment of the piece.

actus—an act.

¹ *acroama* = originally anything performed to give pleasure, then a performer. The Greeks applied the term to music; the Romans used it of any professional performer who entertained guests while at table.

² *statua* is not used of statues of the gods, but *signum, simulacrum*.

fabulam docere (διδάσκειν) (of the writer) (opp. *fabulam discere*—to study a piece, of the actor)—to get a piece played, rehearse it.

fabulam agere—to act a play (said of the actors).

fabulam edere—to bring out a play, put it on the stage (used of the man who finds the money).

fabulam dare—to produce a play (of the writer).

in scaenam producere aliquem—to introduce a character on the stage.

in scaenam prodire—to come upon the stage.

in scaenam redire—to reappear on the scene.

de scaena decedere—to retire from the stage.

in scaenam aliquid inducere—to bring a thing upon the stage.

familia, grex, caterva histrionum—a theatrical company.

dominus gregis—the manager.

*theatrum*¹—the playhouse.

theatra reclamant—the spectators protest.

populum facilem, aequum habere—to have an appreciative audience.

plaudere (not *applaudere*)
plausum dare (alicui) } to applaud, clap a person.

clamores (coronae) facere, excitare—to elicit loud applause.

saepius revocatur (Liv. 7. 2. 9)—he is encored several times.

fabulam exigere (Ter. Andr. Prol.)—to hiss a play.

fabula cadit—a piece is a failure, falls flat.

¹ *theatrum* = (1) the playhouse, theatre; (2) the audience, house. It is used metaphorically for the sphere of activity, theatre, scene, e.g. *theatrum magnum habet ista provincia* (Cic.); *nullum theatrum virtuti conscientia majus* (ibid.)

histrionem exsibilare, explodere, eicere, exigere—to hiss an actor off the stage.

*histrioni acclamare*¹—to interrupt an actor by hooting him.

*partes agere alicuius*²—to play the part of some one.

agere servum, lenonem—to act the rôle of a slave, pander.

actor primarum (secundarum, tertiarum) partium—the actor who plays the leading part.

tragoedia or *fabula Antígona* (not *Antígona trag.* or *fab.*)—the Antigone.

in Sophoclis (not *Sophoclea*) *Aiace* or *apud Sophoclem in Aiace*—in Sophocles' Ajax.

caterva, chorus—the Chorus in Tragedy.

carmen chori, canticum—a choric ode in a tragedy.

loci melici—the lyric portions of a tragedy.

diverbiu—stage dialogue.

canticum—a choric ode.

ludi circenses, scaenici—performances in the circus; theatrical performances.

ludos apparare—to institute games.

ludos facere, edere (Iovi)—to give public games in honour of Jupiter.

¹ Livy is the first writer who uses *acclamare* in a good sense.

² Also used metaphorically of the part played in life, e.g. *partes suscipere, sustinere, dare, tribuere, defendere, tueri*. Similarly *persona* (properly mask) is used in several phrases, e.g. *personam alicuius agere, ferre, tenere*; *personam suscipere* or *inducere*; *personam tueri* (Phil. 8. 10); *personam alicui imponere* (Sull. 3. 8). *persona* thus got the meaning of personality, individuality, character, and lastly in a concrete sense a personage of distinction. N.B.—It never represents our "person," cf. many persons were present, *multi (homines) aderant*.

ludos instaurare—to revive public games.

munus gladiatorium edere, dare
 (or simply *munus edere, dare*) } to give a gladiatorial
gladiatores dare } show.

*familia*¹ *gladiatoria* (Sest. 64. 134)—a band, troupe of gladiators under the management of a lanista.

ludus gladiatorius—a school for gladiators.

gladiatoribus (Att. 2. 19. 3)—at the gladiatorial games.

celebritas ludorum—crowded games.

magnificentia ludorum
ludi apparatissimi } sumptuous public games.

ludi Olympia (not *ludi Olympici*), *Pythia*—the Olympian, Pythian games.

Olympia vincere (Ὀλύμπια νικᾶν)—to win a prize at the Olympian games.

ludi gymnici
certamina gymnica } gymnastic contests.

stadium currere (Off. 3. 10. 42)—to run a foot-race.

VIII. SPEECH AND WRITING

I. SPEECH IN GENERAL

ars dicendi—the art of speaking ; oratory.

ad dicendum se conferre—to devote oneself to oratory.

*dicendi*² *praecepta tradere*—to teach rhetoric.

¹ Hence *familiam ducere*, metaphorically to be at the head of a movement, to play the leading part, e.g. *in iure civili* (Cic.) For other phrases drawn from the wrestling-school *vid.* ix. 6.

² Note the way in which the Latin language prefers a concrete expression in the plural to represent our abstract "rhetoric," cf. *musica* (-orum), *astrae*, *numeri*, *soni*=music, astronomy, arithmetic, acoustics (*vid.* vii. 14).

rhetor, dicendi magister—a teacher of rhetoric.

facultas dicendi—oratorical talent.

natum, factum esse ad dicendum—to be a born orator.

facilem et expeditum esse ad dicendum (Brut. 48. 180)—to be a ready, fluent speaker.

rudem, tironem ac rudem (opp. *exercitatum*) *esse in dicendo*—to be an inexperienced speaker.

disertum esse (De Or. 1. 21. 94)—to be fluent.

eloquentem esse (De Or. 1. 21. 94)—to be a capable, finished speaker.

eloquentia valere }
dicendi arte florere } to be very eloquent.

eloquentiae laude florere—to be a distinguished orator.

vis dicendi—oratorical power.

multum dicendo valere, posse—to have great weight as a speaker.

eloquentiae principatum tenere }
primum or principem inter ora- } to be considered the fore-
tores locum obtinere } most orator.
oratorum principem esse }

orationem conficere—to compose a speech.

orationem commentari (Fam. 16. 26)—to prepare, get up a speech.

oratio meditata (Plin. 26. 3. 7)—a prepared speech.

subito, ex tempore (opp. *ex praeeparato*) *dicere*—to speak extempore.

oratio subita—an extempore speech.

oratio perpetua—a continuous discourse.

*oratio accurata*¹ *et polita*—a carefully prepared speech.

oratio composita—an elaborate speech.

¹ *accuratus* is only used of things, never of persons.

contentio (opp. *sermo*) (Off. 2. 48)—pathetic address ; emotional language.

copiose dicere—to speak very fluently.

ornate dicere—to speak well, elegantly.

libere dicere (Verr. 2. 72. 176)—to speak frankly, independently.

plane, aperte dicere—to speak openly, straightforwardly.

perspicue, diserte dicere—to speak in clear, expressive language.

missis ambagibus dicere—to speak without circumlocution.

accommodate ad persuadendum dicere—to be a persuasive speaker.

*aggredi ad dicendum*¹—to come forward to make a speech ; to address the house.

*verba facere apud*² *populum, in contione*—to address a meeting of the people.

*in contionem (in rostra) ascendere*³ (only of Romans)—to mount the rostra.

orationem habere (Tusc. 5. 33. 94)—to make a speech.

initium dicendi facere—to begin to speak.

finem dicendi facere—to cease speaking.

perorare—(1) to make one's peroration ; (2) to deliver the closing speech (in a case where several speeches have been made).

¹ *surgere ad dicendum* is only used of some one who has been till now seated (De Or. 2. 78. 316).

² *apud* is used of appearing before an official assembly, e.g. *apud populum, apud senatum, apud iudices*. *coram* is used of an informal casual meeting.

³ *ascendere* is more common than *ascendere*, cf. *in contionem ascendere* (Cic. Att. 4. 2. 3 ; Liv. 2. 7. 7, etc. etc.) Similarly *in rostra ascendere* (Cic. Liv.), *in tribunal ascendere* (Liv.) Later *suggestum, rostra ascendere* (Tac. Ann. 15. 59 ; *ibid.* 13. 5).

animos audientium permovere, inflammare—to make an impression on one's audience.

animos tenere—to rivet the attention of . . .

audientiam sibi (orationi) facere—to obtain a hearing.

solutum et expeditum esse ad dicendum—to be never at a loss for something to say.

lingua promptum esse—to have a ready tongue.

celeritas in respondendo—readiness in debate, in repartee.

*bonis lateribus*¹ *esse*—to have good lungs.

linguae solutio—volubility.

2. STYLE—EXPRESSION

genus dicendi (scribendi) ; *oratio*²—style.

genus dicendi grave or grande, medium, tenue³ (cf. Or. 5. 20 ; 6. 21)—elevated, moderate, plain style.

fusum orationis genus—a running style.

inconditum dicendi genus (Brut. 69. 242)—a rough, unpolished style.

¹ *latus* is never used in the singular in good Latin with the meaning "lungs," "breath," "vigour," cf. Cic. *iam me dies, vox, latera deficient si* . . . In a somewhat similar way *lacerti* is used of oratorical vigour, e.g. *ipse hastas . . . oratoris lacertis viribusque torquebit* (De Or. 1. 57. 242).

² Not *stilus*, which means the writing instrument the stylus, hence the expression *stilum vertere* (Verr. 2. 3. 41), to erase what has been written. Metaphorically it denotes—(1) the action of writing, e.g. *stilus optimus est et praestantissimus dicendi effector et magister* ; (2) the manner of writing, mode of composition, e.g. *unus enim sonus est totius orationis et idem stilus*.

³ Speeches belong according to their subject-matter to *genus deliberativum* (συμβουλευτικόν), *genus iudiciale* (δικανικόν), or *genus demonstrativum* (ἐπιδεικτικόν), cf. Cic. de Inv. 1. 5. 7 ; Arist. Rhet. bk. iii.

inflatum orationis genus } a bombastic style.
oratio altius exaggerata }

elatio atque altitudo orationis—the exalted strain of the speech.

exsurgere altius or *incitatus ferri*—to take a higher tone (especially of poets and orators).

magnifice loqui, dicere—(1) to speak vehemently, passionately; (2) to speak pompously, boastfully.

magniloquentia, granditas verborum—pathos; passion.

tragoediae—tragic pathos.

expedita et facile currens oratio } an easy, fluent style.
oratio aequabiliter fluens }

*flumen*¹ *orationis* (De Or. 2. 15. 62)—flow of oratory.

siccitas, sanitas orationis } the plain style.
verborum tenuitas, oratio subtilis }

oratio exilis, ieiuna, arida, exsanguis—the dry, lifeless style.

ornatus orationis, verborum—well-chosen language, grace of style.

elegantia orationis—tasteful description.

oratio pura, pura et emendata—pure, correct language.

integritas, sinceritas orationis (not *puritas*)—purity of style.

*oratio inquinata*² (De Opt. Gen. Or. 3. 7)—incorrect language.

orationes Catonis antiquitatem redolent (Brut. 21. 82)—Cato's speeches sound archaic.

ex illius orationibus ipsae Athenae redolent—there is a flavour of Atticism about his discourse.

oratio soluta (not *prosa*) or simply *oratio*—prose.

¹ On the other hand, *oratio fluit* (De Or. 3. 49. 190)=the language has no rhythm.

² Not *impura*, which means unchaste, obscene.

oratio numeroſe cadit—his ſtyle has a well-balanced cadence.

numeris orationem aſtringere, vincere—to make a ſpeech rhythmical.

lumina, flores dicendi (De Or. 3. 25. 96)—flowers of rhetoric; embellishments of ſtyle.

ſententias (verbis) explicare, aperire—to explain one's ſentiments.

ſententiae reconditae et exquisitae (Brut. 97. 274)—profound ſentiments.

ubertas (not *divitiae*) *et copia orationis*—a full and copious ſtyle of ſpeech.

crebritas or *copia* (opp. *inopia*) *ſententiarum* or ſimply *copia*—richneſs of ideas.

*ſententiis abundans*¹ or *creber* (opp. *ſententiis inanis*)—rich in ideas.

adumbrare aliquid (Or. 14. 43)—to roughly ſketch a thing.

exprimere aliquid verbis or *oratione* (*vid.* p. 77, note)—to expreſs clearly, make a lifelike representation of a thing.

exponere aliquid or *de aliqua re*—to give an account of a thing (either orally or in writing).

ſententiae inter ſe nexae

perpetuitas verborum

contextus orationis (not *nexus*,

conexus ſententiarum)

ratio ſententiarum

ratio, qua ſententiae inter ſe

excipiunt

} the connection.

} the connection of thought.

¹ Not *dives* which Cicero uſes only abſolutely and almoſt always of perſons, cf. however *animus hominis dives* (Parad. 6. 44), *divitior mihi et affluentior videtur eſſe vera amicitia*, (De Am. 16. 58).

vitam alicuius exponere—to give an account of a man's life.

vitam alicuius depingere—to make a sketch of a man's life.

de ingenio moribusque alicuius exponere—to make a character-sketch of a person.

summo colore aliquid illustrare—to depict a thing in lively colours.

ante oculos ponere aliquid—to bring a thing vividly before the eyes.

oculis or *sub oculos*, *sub aspectum subicere aliquid*—to represent a thing vividly.

rerum sub aspectum paene subiectio (De Or. 3. 53. 202)—graphic depiction.

perlustrare, *lustrare oculis aliquid*—to scrutinise, examine closely.

sic exponere aliquid, quasi agatur res (non quasi narretur)—to represent a thing dramatically.

aliquem disputantem facere, inducere, fingere (est aliquis apud aliquem disputans)—to introduce a person (into a dialogue) discoursing on . . .

in uno conspectu ponere aliquid
sub unum aspectum subicere
aliquid } to give a general idea of a thing.

in brevi conspectu ponere aliquid—to make a short survey of a thing.

uno conspectu videre aliquid—to have a general idea of a thing.

breviter tangere, attingere aliquid—to touch briefly on a thing.

strictim, leviter tangere, attingere, perstringere aliquid
quasi praeteriens, in transitu
attingere aliquid } to make a cursory mention of a thing; to mention by the way (not *obiter* or *in transcurso*).

res summas attingere } to dwell only on the main
summam aliquid exponere } points.

multa verba facere
multum, nimium esse (in ali- } to go deeply into a matter,
qua re) (De Or. 2. 4. 17) } discuss it fully.

*pluribus verbis, copiosius explicare, persequi*¹ *aliquid*—to give a full, detailed account of a thing.

fusius, uberius, copiosius disputare, dicere de aliqua re—to speak at great length on a subject, discuss very fully.

breviter, paucis explicare aliquid } to explain a matter
rem paucis absolvere (Sall. Jug. } briefly, in a few words
 17. 2) } (not *paucis verbis*).

rebus ipsis par est oratio } the circumstances are de-
rebus verba respondent } scribed in language worthy
 of them.

copiam quam potui persecutus sum—I have exhausted all my material.

verbis non omnia exsequi posse—to be unable to say all one wants.

in medium proferre aliquid—to bring a subject forward into discussion.

in medio ponere (proponere)—to publish, make public.

silentio praeterire (not *praetermittere*) *aliquid*—to pass over in silence.

significare aliquem or *aliquid* }
significatione appellare aliquem } to allude to a person or
describere aliquem (Cacl. 20. 50) } thing (not *alludere*).

leviter significare aliquid—to hint vaguely at a thing.

¹ *persequi* is often used in the meaning to expound, treat of either orally or in writing, e.g. *alicuius vitam, alicuius laudes versibus, res Hannibalis*.

ordine narrare, quomodo res gesta sit—to detail the whole history of an affair.

dicendo ornare aliquid—to embellish a narrative.

rhetorice, tragice ornare aliquid (Brut. 11. 43)—to add rhetorical, dramatic embellishments to a subject.

digressus, digressio, egressio
quod ornandi causa additum est } a digression, episode.

includere in orationem aliquid
inserere orationi aliquid
interponere aliquid (De Am. 1. 3) } to interpolate, insert something.

dicendo augere, amplificare aliquid (opp. *dicendo extenuare aliquid*)—to lend lustre to a subject by one's description.

in maius ferre, in maius extollere aliquid—to exaggerate a thing.

in maius accipere aliquid—to overestimate a thing.

digredi (a proposito) (De Or. 2. 77. 311)—to digress, deviate.

studio alicuius rei provectus sum—my zeal for a thing has led me too far.

longe, alte (longius, altius) repetere (either absolute or *ab aliqua re*)—to go a long way back (in a narrative).

oratio longius repetita (De Or. 3. 24. 91)—a rather recondite speech.

accedere ad cotidiani sermonis genus—to adopt the language of everyday life.

ad vulgarem sensum or *ad communem opinionem orationem accommodare* (Off. 2. 10. 35)—to express oneself in popular language.

3. DELIVERY—VOICE

actio (Brut. 38)—delivery.

*pronuntiatio*¹ c. Gen.—artistic delivery; declamation.

*actio paulum claudicat*²—the delivery is rather halting, poor.

haerere, haesitare (Catil. 2. 6. 13)—to stop short, hesitate.

perturbari, permoveri—to be nervous, embarrassed.

*de scripto orationem*³ *habere, dicere* (opp. *sine scripto, ex memoria*)—to read a speech.

interpellare aliquem (dicentem)—to interrupt.

vox magna, clara (Sulla 10. 30)—a strong, loud voice.

vox gravis, acuta, parva, mediocris—a deep, high, thin, moderate voice.

vox canōra (Brut. 63. 234)—a melodious, ringing voice.

vox lenis, suppressa, summissa—a gentle, subdued voice.

vocem mittere (sonitum reddere of things)—to speak, utter a sound.

vocem summittere—to lower one's voice.

contentio, remissio vocis—raising, lowering the voice.

vocem intercludere (Just. 11. 8. 4)—to prevent some one from speaking.

nulla vox est ab eo audita—no sound passed his lips.

magna voce clamare—to shout at the top of one's voice.

clamorem tollere (Liv. 3. 28)—to raise a shout, a cry.

gestum (always in the sing.) *agere*—to gesticulate.

¹ Not *declamatio* which = an oratorical exercise. Distinguish *pronuntiare* (De. Or. 1. 59. 251), to declaim a thing according to the rules of rhetoric; and *declamare* = to go through rhetorical exercises as a practice in speaking.

² *claudicare* often metaph. of things which are unequal, weak, e.g. *amicitia claudicat* (Fin. 1. 69).

³ But to read a speech *orationem legere* (Brut. 51. 191); to read with expression, *recitare* (Phil. 10. 2. 5).

4. SUBJECT-MATTER—ARGUMENT

non habeo argumentum scribendi
deest mihi argumentum ad scri-
bendum (Att. 9. 7. 7) } I have nothing to write
 about.
non habeo, non est quod scribam }

res (opp. *verba*) *mihi suppetit*—I have abundance to say.
materia mihi crescit—my subject grows as I write.
res componere ac digerere—to arrange and divide the
 subject-matter.

dispositio rerum (De Inv. 1. 7. 9)—the arrangement of the
 subject-matter.

materia rerum et copia uberrima
infinita et immensa materia } abundance of material.
materiam ad ornatum praeberere—to afford matter for
 elaboration, embellishment.

id quod (mihi) propositum est
res proposita
id quod quaerimus (quaeritur)
institutum or *id quod institui* } a theme, subject proposed
 for discussion.

a proposito aberrare, declinare, deflectere, digredi, egredi—to
 digress from the point at issue.

ad propositum reverti, redire
ad rem redire } to come back to the point.

sed redeat, unde aberravit oratio
sed ad id, unde digressi sumus,
revertamur
verum ut ad id, unde digressa est
oratio, revertamur } but to return from the
 digression we have
 been making.

mihi propositum est c. Inf. (or *mihi proposui, ut*)—the task

I have put before myself is . . .

ponere—to propose, set a theme.

ponere alicui, de quo disputet—to set some one a theme for discussion.

ponere iubere, qua de re quis audire velit (Fin. 2. 1. 1)—to let those present fix any subject they like for discussion.

5. QUESTION—ANSWER

quaestionem ponere, proponere—to propose a subject of debate, put a question.

quaestionem poscere (Fin. 2. 1. 1)—to get a question submitted to one.

hoc loco existit quaestio, quaeritur—at this point the question arises.

nunc id quaeritur, agitur—the question now is . . .

res, de qua nunc quaerimus, quaeritur—the question at issue.

magna quaestio est (followed by an indirect question)—it is a difficult point, disputed question.

quaerendum esse mihi visum est—the question has forced itself on my mind . . .

quaestionem solvere—to decide, determine a question.

quaestio ad exitum venit—the question has been settled.

*ad interrogata respondere*¹—to answer questions.

bene interrogare—to cross-examine cleverly, put leading questions.

percontanti non deesse (De Or. 1. 21. 97)—to answer every question.

¹ Note to answer (a thing) *respondere ad aliquid* or *alicui rei*; to answer (a person) always *alicui*. So *dicere alicui* to speak to a person, but *scribere ad aliquem*.

responsum ab aliquo ferre, auferre—to extract an answer from some one.

*respondere in hanc sententiam*¹—to answer to this effect.

6. HUMOUR—EARNEST

ioco uti (Off. 1. 29. 103)—to make a joke.

haec iocatus sum, per iocum dixi—I said it in jest.

animo prompto esse ad iocandum—to be humorously inclined.

extra iocum, remoto ioco (Fam. 7. 11. 3)—joking apart.

facete dicere—to be witty.

facetiis uti, facetum esse—to make witty remarks.

facete et commode dicere—to indulge in apt witticisms.

breviter et commode dictum—a short, pointed witticism.

facete dictum—a witticism, bon mot.

arcessitum dictum (De Or. 2. 63. 256)—a far-fetched joke.

dicta dicere in aliquem—to make jokes on a person.

aspergere sales orationi (Or. 26. 87)—to intersperse one's speech with humorous remarks.

aliquid ad ridiculum convertere—to make a joke of a thing.

(homo) ridiculus (Plaut. Stich. 1. 3. 21)—a wit; a joker.

lepos in iocando—humour.

iucunde esse (Deiot. 7. 19)—to be in a good temper.

se dare iucunditati—to let oneself be jovial.

sibi displicere (opp. *sibi placere*)—to be in a bad temper.

ioca et seria agere—to be now jesting, now in earnest.

serio dicere (Plaut. Bacch. 1. 1. 42)—to say in earnest . . .

severitatem adhibere—to show that one is serious.

¹ *responsum dare* only of answers given by oracles or lawyers.

ineptum esse (De Or. 2. 4. 17)—to be silly, without tact.
*nimum diligentem esse*¹—to be pedantic.

7. LANGUAGE—USE OF LANGUAGE—TRANS- LATION—GRAMMAR

lingua graeca latinâ locupletior (copiosior, uberior) est—the
 Greek language is a richer one than the Latin.

commercium linguae—intercourse of speech.

volubilitas, solutio linguae—volubility.

vitium orationis, sermonis or simply *vitium*—a mistake,
 solecism.

saepe (crebro, multa) peccavit, erravit, lapsus est—he has
 made several mistakes.

eiusdem linguae societate coniunctum esse cum aliquo (De Or.
 3. 59. 223)—to be united by having a common
 language.

orationis expertem esse—to be unable to express one's
 ideas.

sermo patrius (Fin. 1. 2. 4)—native tongue; vernacular.

consuetudo sermonis, loquendi—the usage of language.

cotidiani sermonis usus

communis sermonis consuetudo

sermo familiaris et cotidianus

} the ordinary usage of lan-
 guage, everyday speech.

aliquid a consuetudine sermonis latini abhorret, alienum est
 —the expression is not in accordance with Latin
 usage.

¹ Such words as "pedantry," "pedant" can be expressed very vari-
 ously in Latin, cf. N. D. 3. 31. 71 *posse acerbos e Zenonis schola*
exire; Pro Mur. 9. 19 *multorum difficultatem exsorbuit*; Brut.
 38. 143 *erat in Crasso latine loquendi sine molestia diligens ele-*
gantia.

consuetudo vitiosa et corrupta (opp. *pura et incorrupta*)
sermonis—incorrect usage.

*incorrupta latini sermonis integritas*¹ (Brut. 35. 132)—pure,
 correct Latin.

sermo latinus (opp. *sermo parum latinus*) (cf. p. 94, note)
 —good Latin.

latine loqui (Brut. 45. 166)—(1) to speak Latin, (2) to
 speak good Latin (also *bene latine*), (3) to express
 oneself clearly.

graece or *graeca lingua loqui*—to speak the Greek lan-
 guage.

latinam linguam scire or *didicisse* }
latine scire } to know Latin.

latine commentari—to write treatises in Latin.

aliquid e graeco in latinum (sermonem) convertere, vertere,
transferre—to translate from Greek into Latin.

Platonem vertere convertere—to translate Plato.

ab or *de* (not *ex*) *Platone vertere, convertere, transferre*—to
 translate from Plato.

ex Platonis Phaedone haec in latinum conversa sunt—what
 follows has been translated into Latin from Plato's
 Phaedo.

aliquid (graeca) latine reddere or *sermone latino interpretari*
 —to render something in Latin.

ad verbum transferre, exprimere }
verbum e verbo exprimere } to translate literally, word
verbum pro verbo reddere } for word (not *verbo*
totidem verbis transferre } *tenus*).

his fere verbis, hoc fere modo convertere, transferre—to
 translate freely.

¹ Cf. Cic. ad Herenn. 4. 12. 17 *latinitas est quae sermonem purum
 conservat ab omni vitio remotum.*

liber (*scriptoris*) *conversus*, *translatus*—the work when translated ; translation (concrete).

interpretatio, *translatio* (not *versio* or *conversio*)—the process of translation.

interpres—the translator.

leges dicendi
*praecepta*¹ *grammaticorum* } the rules of speech, grammar.

*grammaticus*² (*De Or.* 1. 3. 10)—a linguist, philologist.

emendate scribere—to write correctly, in faultless style.

*latine scribere*³ (*Opt. Gen. Or.* 2. 4)—to write good Latin.

8. SENTENCE—PERIOD—WORDS—PROVERBS —SYLLABLES

enuntiatio, *enuntiatum*, *sententia*—the sentence, proposition.

compositio, *structura verborum*—the structure of the sentence.

ambitus, *circuitus*, *comprehensio*, *continuatio* (*verborum*, *orationis*), also simply *periodus*—the period.

constructio, *structura verborum*, *forma dicendi*—the construction.

adiungi, *addi coniunctivo* (*Marc. Cap.* 3. 83)—to be used with the conjunctive mood.

¹ Not *regula*, which means a level, standard, e.g. *regula ad quam iudicia rerum diriguntur* (*Cic.*)

² The adverb *grammatice* is used with *loqui*, *scribere*=to speak, write correctly ; *grammatista* and also *litterator* are used of elementary teachers.

³ Cf. *latine docere philosophiam*, to teach philosophy in Latin ; *Fin.* 3. 12. 40 *latine scire*, to know Latin (cf. ἑλληνιστὶ ξυνιέναι *Xen. Anab.* 7. 6. 8). Also *latine didicisse*, *latine oblivisci* (*Caec.* 22. 62), in which Dräger supposes an ellipse of *loqui* or *dicere*.

copia, ubertas verborum—profusion of words.

verbis abundantem esse, abundare—to be rich in words.

inopia verborum—poverty of expression.

lectissimis verbis uti (De Or. 3. 37)—to employ carefully chosen expressions.

prisca, obsoleta (opp. *usitata*), *ambigua verba*—obsolete, ambiguous expressions.

locutio (Brut. 74. 258)—a phrase.

verbo, nomine ; *re, re quidem vera*—nominally ; really.

si verba spectas—literally.

verbis alicuius, e.g. *salutare* (Liv. 9. 36)—in some one's name ; on some one's behalf (not *nomine alicuius*).

haec verba sunt (Ter. Phorm. 3. 2. 32)—these are mere empty phrases.

inanis verborum sonitus—mere words ; empty sound.

inanium verborum flumen—senseless rant.

flosculi, rhetorum pompa—fine, rhetorical phrases.

voces iacere (Sall. Jug. 11)—to let fall an expression.

nullum (omnino) verbum facere—to not say a word.

ne verbum (without *unum*) *quidem de aliquo facere*—to say not a syllable about a person.

verba facere (*de aliqua re, apud aliquem*)—to speak on a subject.

verbum ex aliquo elicere—to extract a word from some one.

verbis concertare or *altercari cum aliquo* (B. C. 3. 19. 6)—to hold an altercation with a man.

verborum concertatio—an altercation, debate.

pauca dicere (*pauca verba dicere* only of the orator)—to say only a few words.

omnia verba huc redeunt—all this means to say.

nullum verbum ex ore eius excidit (or simply *ei*)—no word escaped him.

verbo parum valere (Tusc. 3. 5. 11)—to be unable to find a suitable expression.

verbum prorsus nullum intellegere—not to understand a single word.

huic rei deest apud nos vocabulum—we have no expression for that.

inducere novum verbum in latinam linguam—to introduce a new word into the Latin language.

verba parere, fingere, facere—to invent, form words.

nominum interpretatio—etymology (not *etymologia*).

vocabulum,¹ *verbum*, *nomen ducere ab, ex* . . .—to form, derive a word from . . . (used of the man who first creates the word).

<i>verbum ductum esse a</i> . . . <i>putare</i>	} to derive a word from
<i>originem verbi repetere a</i> . . .	
	} . . . (used of an
	} etymologist).

nomina enodare or *verborum origines quaerere, indagare*—to give the etymological explanation of words.

nomen amicitiae (or simply *amicitia*) *dicitur ab amando*—the word *amicitia* comes from *amare*.

in aliqua re dici—to be used in speaking of a thing.

<i>quid significat, sonat haec vox?</i>	} what is the meaning, the
<i>quae est vis huius verbi?</i>	
<i>quae notio or sententia subiecta</i>	
<i>est huic voci?</i>	
	} original sense of this
	} word?

vis et notio verbi, vocabuli—the fundamental meaning of a word.

¹ *verbum derivare* means to form new words from words which exist already, e.g. by adding a syllable, *Atrides* from *Atreus*. For word-building, cf. Cic. De Or. 3. 37 and 38; Hor. A. P. 46.

vox, nomen carendi or simply *carere hoc significat* (Tusc. i.

36. 88)—the word *carere* means . . .

quem intellegimus sapientem?—what do we understand by
“a wise man”?

quae intellegitur virtus } what do we mean by “virtue”?
quid est virtus? }

idem valere, significare, declarare—to have the same meaning.

vocabula idem fere declarantia—synonyms.

vocabulum latius patet—the word has a more extended signification.

vocabulum angustius valet—the word has a narrow meaning.

iracundiam sic (ita) definiunt, ut ulciscendi libidinem esse dicant or *ut u. libido sit* or *iracundiam sic definiunt, ulc. libidinem*—anger is defined as a passionate desire for revenge.

in bonam (malam) partem accipere aliquid—to take a thing in good (bad) part.

aemulatio dupliciter dicitur, ut et in laude et in vitio hoc nomen sit—the word *aemulatio* is employed with two meanings, in a good and a bad sense.

verba ac litteras or *scriptum (legis) sequi* (opp. *sententia* the spirit)—to hold by the letter (of the law).

hoc vocabulum generis neutri (not *neutrius*) *est*—this word is neuter.

ordo verborum (Or. 63. 214)—the order of words.

vocabulum proprium—the proper term; a word used strictly.

verbum translatum (Or. 27. 92)—a figurative expression; a word used metaphorically.

translatio—a metaphor.

*verba composita*¹—well-arranged words.

verborum immutatio—a trope ; metonymy.

continua translatio (Or. 27. 94)—an allegory ; continuous metaphor.

simili uti—to employ a comparison, simile.

dissimulatio (Off. I. 30. 108)—irony.

vetus (verbum) est (c. Acc. c. Inf.)—it was said long ago that . . .

ut est in proverbio

ut or quod or quomodo aiunt,
ut or quemadmodum dicitur } as the proverb says.

in proverbii consuetudinem or simply *in proverbium venire*—to pass into a proverb.

proverbii locum obtinere (Tusc. 4. 16. 36)—to be used as a proverb.

hoc est Graecis hominibus in proverbio—this is a proverb among the Greeks.

bene illo Graecorum proverbio praecipitur—that Greek proverb contains an excellent lesson.

vetamur vetere proverbio—an old proverb tells us not to . . .

proverbium vetustate or *sermone tritum* (*vid.* p. 11, note)—an old proverb which every one knows.

syllabam, litteram producere (opp. *corripere*) (Quintil. 9. 4. 89)—to lengthen the pronunciation of a syllable or letter.

haec vox longa syllaba terminatur, in longam syllabam cadit, exit—this word ends in a long syllable.

oriri a longa (De Or. I. 55. 236)—to begin with a long syllable.

¹ Compound words = *verba copulata, iuncta* (Or. 48. 159), *coniuncta*, cf. Cic. De Or. 3. 38. 154.

syllabarum auceps—a verbal, petty critic ; a caviller.

verborum aucupium or *captatio*—minute, pedantic carping at words.

litteras exprimere (opp. *obscurare*)—to pronounce the syllables distinctly.

ad litteram, litterate—to the letter ; literally.

*litterarum*¹ *ordo* } the alphabet.

litterae, elementa }

ad litteram or *litterarum ordine digerere*—to arrange in alphabetical order.

9. WRITING—WRITERS—BOOKS

litteris mandare or *consignare aliquid* (Acad. 2. 1. 2)—to put down in writing.

litteris persequi (*vid.* p. 127, note) *aliquid*—to treat in writing.

scriptor (not *auctor* = guarantor)—the writer, author.

scribere—to take to writing, become an author.

ad scribendum or *ad scribendi* }
studium se conferre } to become a writer, em-
animum ad scribendum appel- } brace a literary career.
lere, applicare }

librum scribere, conscribere—to write a book.

librum conficere, componere (De Sen. 1. 2)—to compose, compile a book.

librum edere (Div. 1. 3. 6)—to publish a book.

librum evolvere, volvere }
volumen explicare } to open a book.

¹ Cf. *quarta elementorum littera*, the fourth letter of the alphabet (Suet. Iul. 56).

librum mittere ad aliquem (Fin. 1. 3. 8)—to dedicate a book to some one.

*index, inscriptio*¹ *libri*—the title of a book.

*liber inscribitur*² *Laelius* (Off. 2. 9. 30)—the book is entitled “Laelius.”

Cicero dicit in Laelio (suo) or in eo (not suo) libro, qui inscribitur Laelius—Cicero says in his “Laelius.”

est liber de . . .—there exists a book on . . .

exstat liber (notice the order of the words)—the book is still extant.

liber intercidit, periit—the book has been lost.

liber deperditus—a book which has been entirely lost sight of.

liber perditus—a lost book of which fragments (*reliquiae*, not *fragmenta*) remain.

liber qui fertur alicuius—a book which is attributed to some one.

nescio quis—an anonymous writer.

liber refertur ad nescio quem auctorem—the book is attributed to an unknown writer.

hic liber est de amicitia (not *agit*) or *hoc libro agitur de am.*—the book treats of friendship.

libro continetur aliquid
libro scriptor complexus est
aliquid } the book contains something . . . (not *continet aliquid*).

in extremo libro (Q. Fr. 2. 7. 1)—at the end of the book.

¹ Not *titulus* which means—(1) an inscription on a tomb, monument; (2) public notice, e.g. an advertisement of a sale, *sub titulum misit lares* (Ov.); (3) metaph. title, honour, e.g. *consulatus, coniugis*. It is only in very late writers that it = a title of a book.

² The perfect *inscriptus est* is only used when the writer himself is speaking of his book, e.g. *de senectute disputavi eo libro, qui Cato maior inscriptus est*, “. . . which I have entitled *Cato maior*.”

liber mihi est in manibus
librum in manibus habere } to be engaged on a book.
 (Acad. I. I. 2)

liber, oratio in manibus est—the book, speech can easily be obtained.

librum in manus sumere—to take up a book in one's hands.

*librum de manibus ponere*¹—to lay down a book (*vid.* p. 189, note).

perpolire, limare diligenter librum, opus—to polish, finish a work with the greatest care.

extrema manus accedit operi (active *extremam manum imponere operi*)—to put the finishing touch to a work.

liber accurate, diligenter scriptus—a carefully written book.

aliquid, multa ex Ciceronis libris excerpere (not *excerpere librum*)—to make extracts from Cicero's writings.

aliquid in commentarios suos referre (Tusc. 3. 22. 54)—to enter a thing in one's note-book.

librum annotare, interpolare, distinguere—to furnish a book with notes, additional extracts, marks of punctuation.

se abdere in bibliothecam suam—to bury oneself in one's library.

Platonem legere, lectitare—to read Plato.

locum Platonis afferre, proferre (not *citare*)—to quote a passage of Plato.

scriptor hoc loco dicit—our (not *noster*) author tells us at this point.

Cicero loco quodam haec dicit—Cicero says this somewhere.

¹ Distinguish the two verbs *ponere*=to set down for a moment temporarily, and *deponere* to lay aside, abandon altogether. Cf. *vincere* and *devincere*, *perdere* and *deperdere*.

Platonem legere et cognoscere—to study Plato.

legendo percurrere aliquid—to read cursorily.

apud Platonem scriptum videmus,¹ *scriptum est* or simply *est*
—we read in Plato.

in Platonis Phaedone scriptum est—in Plato's "Phaedo"
we read.

verba, oratio, exemplum scriptoris—the text of the author
(not *textus*).

*legentes, ii qui legunt*²—the reader.

languorem, molestiam legentium animis afferre—to weary,
bore the reader.

liber plenus delectationis—a very charming book.

alicuius mens in scriptis spirat—a man's soul breathes
through his writings.

mendum (scripturae) (Fam. 6. 7. 1)—a clerical error, copy-
ist's mistake.

mendose scriptum—full of orthographical errors.

labi in scribendo—to make a mistake in writing.

mendosum esse (Verr. 2. 4. 77)—(1) to make frequent mis-
takes in writing ; (2) to be full of mistakes (speaking
of a passage).

inducere verbum (Phil. 13. 19. 43)—to strike out, delete a
word.

¹ *legere* in this connection only in the perfect.

² Not *lector*, which means a professional reader, cf. De Or. 2. 55. 223.
Similarly "audience" = *ii qui audiunt* or *audientes* (usually in the
oblique cases). Words in *-tor* and *-trix* always denote those who do
something habitually or for some permanent object. Thus of func-
tionaries—*ensor*, *dictator*, *quaestor* ; of artisans—*fictor* sculptor, *insti-*
tor retail dealer, *mercator* wholesale merchant, *structor* mason ; of
people who are always showing some distinguishing quality or defect—
calumniator, *ratiocinator* ; of those who have performed a feat so re-
markable as to confer on them a durable characteristic—*creator urbis*
(Romulus), *servator Graeciae* (Themistocles), *Cimbrorum victor*
(Marius), etc.

10. LETTERS

epistulam (litteras) dare, scribere, mittere ad aliquem—to write a letter to some one.

epistula ad Atticum data, scripta, missa or *quae ad A. scripta est*—a letter to Atticus.

epistulam dare alicui ad aliquem—to charge some one with a letter for some one else.

epistulam reddere alicui (Att. 5. 21. 4)—to deliver a letter to some one (used of the messenger).

epistularum commercium
litterae missae et allatae } correspondence.

colloqui cum aliquo per litteras—to correspond with some one.

litteras inter se dare et accipere—to be in correspondence with . . .

litteras perferre aliquo—to take a letter somewhere.

epistulam signare, obsignare—to seal, fasten a letter.

epistulam solvere, aperire, resignare (of Romans also *linum incidere*)—to open a letter.

epistulam interciperere (Att. 1. 13. 2)—to intercept a letter.

epistulam deprehendere—to take forcible possession of a letter.

litteras recitare (Att. 8. 9. 2)—to read a letter aloud (in public).

litterae hoc exemplo (Att. 9. 6. 3)—a letter, the tenor of which is . . .

litterae in hanc sententiam or *his verbis scriptae sunt*—the terms, contents of the letter are as follows.

Kalendis Ianuariis Romā (dabam)—Rome, January 1st.
dies (fem. in this sense)—the date.

*pater optime*¹ or *carissime*, *mi pater* (*vid.* p. 197)—my dear father.

litteras reddere datas a. d. Kal. X. Octob.—to deliver a letter dated September 21st.

IX. THE EMOTIONS

I. DISPOSITION—EMOTION IN GENERAL

animi affectio or *habitus* (*De Inv.* 2. 5)—humour; disposition.

√ *ita*² *animo affectum esse*—to be so disposed.

animos tentare (*Cluent.* 63. 176)—to try to divine a person's disposition.

√ *animum alicuius* or simply *aliquem flectere*—to make a person change his intention.

√ *animi motus, commotio, permotio*—the emotions, feelings.

aliqua re moveri, commoveri—to be moved by a thing.

alicuius animum commovere—to touch a person's heart, move him.

alicuius animum pellere—to make an impression on a person's mind.

motus excitare in animo (*opp. sedare, exstinguere*)—to excite emotion.

commotum or *concitatum esse*—to be moved, agitated.

commotum perturbatumque esse—to be greatly agitated.

alicuius mentem turbare, conturbare, perturbare—to upset a person.

quid tibi animi est?—what sort of humour are you in?

¹ Neither *amatus* nor *dilectus* can be used in this connection.

² But not *magno, laeto*, etc., *animo affici*.

2. JOY—PAIN.

✓ *afficere aliquem gaudio, laetitia* } to give pleasure to some
afferre alicui laetitiam } one.

✓ *laetitiam capere* or *percipere ex* } to take pleasure in a
aliqua re } thing.
delectari aliqua re

in sinu gaudere (Tusc. 3. 21. 51)—to rejoice in secret.

*gaudio perfundi*¹—to be filled with delight.

cumulum gaudii alicui afferre (vid. p. 50) (Fam. 16. 21. 1)

—to add the crowning point to a person's joy.

gaudio, laetitia exsultare—to utter cries of joy.

laetitia gestire (Tusc. 4. 6. 13)—to be transported with joy.

*effusa*² *laetitia* }
laetitia gestiens } a transport of joy.

✓ *gaudio, laetitia efferre*—to be beside oneself with joy.

animum alicuius ad laetitiam excitare—to put a man in a pleasurable frame of mind.

nimio gaudio paene desipere—to almost lose one's reason from excess of joy.

doleo aliquid, aliqua re, de and
ex aliqua re

aegre, graviter, moleste fero } I am pained, vexed, sorry.
aliquid (or with Acc. c. Inf.
or *quod*) }

¹ *gaudio compleri* (Fin. 5. 14. 69) is rare in Cicero; *gaudio impleri* does not occur. Speaking generally, *complere, implere, replere*, should not be used of the emotions.

² Cf. *effusa fuga*, headlong flight; *effusi sumptus*, lavish expenditure (Rosc. Am. 24. 68), *cursus effusus* (Liv. 9. 41. 17).

*tuam vicem*¹ *doleo*—I am sorry for you.

✓ *dolore affici*—to feel pain.

dolorem capere (*percipere*) *ex aliqua re*—to be vexed about a thing.

doloribus premi, angi, ardere, cruciari, destineri et divelli—to feel acute pain.

dolorem alicui facere, afferre, commovere—to cause a person pain.

acerbum dolorem alicui inurere—to cause any one very acute pain.

acer morsus doloris est (Tusc. 2. 22. 53)—the pain is very severe.

dolorem in lacrimas effundere—to find relief in tears.

✓ *dolori indulgere*—to give way to grief.

dolor infixus animo haeret (Phil. 2. 26)—grief has struck deep into his soul.

dolore confici, tabescere—to be wasted with grief; to die of grief.

dolores remittunt, relaxant—the pain grows less.

dolori resistere—to struggle against grief.

*callum obducere*² *dolori* (Tusc. 2. 15. 36)—to render insensible to pain.

animus meus ad dolorem obduruit (Fam. 2. 16. 1)—I have become callous to all pain.

dolorem abicere, deponere, depellere—to banish grief.

¹ *vicem* with a genitive or a possessive pronoun has the meaning "on account of," "with regard to," especially with verbs expressing the emotions, e.g. *doleo, timeo, irascor*.

² Note too *consuetudo callum obduxit stomacho meo* (Fam. 9. 2. 3), habit has made me callous. *callum* properly is the thick nerveless skin which covers the bodies of animals.

dolorem alicui eripere (Att. 9. 6. 4)—to free a person from his pain.

cum magno meo dolore—to my sorrow.

3. VEXATION—CARE—EQUANIMITY— CONTENTMENT—AFFLICTION

in aegritudine, sollicitudine esse } to be vexed, mortified,
aegritudine, sollicitudine affici } anxious.
sollicitum esse

✓ *nihil omnino curare* } not to trouble oneself about a
non laborare de aliqua re } thing.

aliquid me sollicitat, me sollicitum habet, mihi sollicitudini est, mihi sollicitudinem affert—something harasses me, makes me anxious.

aegritudo exest animum planeque conficit (Tusc. 3. 13. 27)
—anxiety gnaws at the heart and incapacitates it.

✓ *aegritudine, curis confici*—to be wasting away with grief.

aegritudine afflictum, debilitatum esse, iacere—to be bowed down, prostrated by grief.

aegritudinem alicuius elevare } to comfort another in his
aliquem aegritudine levare } trouble.

✓ *quieto, tranquillo, securo animo esse*—to enjoy peace of mind.

rebus suis, sorte sua contentum esse—to be contented.

satis habeo, satis mihi est c. Inf.—I am content to . . .

paucis, parvo contentum esse—to be satisfied with a little.

✓ *fortunaē meae me paenitet*¹—I am discontented with my lot.

¹ The evidence of inscriptions and the best MSS. seems to point to the derivation of *paenitet*, not from *poena* (cf. *punitur, impunis*), but from the root contained in *penes, penetrare, penitus*; its original meaning would thus be, “to be touched, affected within, at heart” (Bréal).

✓ *non me paenitet, quantum profecerim*—I am not dissatisfied with my progress.

in luctu esse (Sest. 14. 32)—to suffer affliction.

in sordibus luctuque iacere—to be in great trouble, affliction.

mors alicuius luctum mihi attulit—some one's death has plunged me in grief.

in maximos luctus incidere—to be overwhelmed by a great affliction.

magnum luctum haurire (without *ex*-)—to undergo severe trouble, trials.

luctum percipere ex aliqua re—to feel sorrow about a thing.

omnem luctum plane abstergere—to banish all sad thoughts.

luctum deponere (Phil. 14. 13. 34)—to lay aside one's grief.

vel maximos luctus vetustate tollit diuturnitas (Fam. 5. 16. 5)—time assuages the most violent grief.

4. FEAR—TERROR—ANXIETY

timorem, terrorem alicui inicere, more strongly *incutere*—to inspire fear, terror.

timor aliquem occupat (B. G. 1. 39)—fear comes upon some one.

in timore esse, versari—to be in fear.

in timorem venire, pervenire—to become frightened.

metus aliquem exanimat (Mil. 24. 65)—a man is paralysed with fear.

exalbescere metu—to grow pale with fear.

metu fractum et debilitatum, perculsum esse—to be completely prostrated by fear.

abdicere, omittere timorem—to banish one's fears.

a metu respirare (Cluent. 70. 200) } to recover from one's
ex metu se recreare, se colligere } fright.

respirandi spatium dare—to give time for recovery.

terror incidit alicui

terror invadit in aliquem (rarely) } terror, panic seizes some
alicui, after Livy aliquem } one.

in terrorem conicere aliquem—to overwhelm some one with
 terror.

(animo) angere (Brut. 27)—to be very uneasy; to fret.

cura sollicitat angitque aliquem—anxiety troubles and
 torments one.

angoribus premi—to be tormented with anxiety.

angoribus confici (Phil. 2. 15. 37)—to be worn out, almost
 dead with anxiety.

5. COURAGE—DISCOURAGEMENT— PUSILLANIMITY—PRIDE—ARROGANCE— INSOLENT

bono animo esse
bonum animum habere } to be brave, courageous.

animus alicui accedit, crescit
animum capere, colligere } to take courage.

animum recipere (Liv. 2. 50)—to take courage again.

animo forti esse—to be brave by nature.

fortem te praebe—be brave!

alacri et erecto animo esse—to show a brisk and cheerful
 spirit.

animum facere, addere alicui—to succeed in encouraging
 a person

animum alicuius confirmare—to strengthen, confirm a person's courage.

animum alicui augere (B. G. 7. 70)—to increase a person's courage.

animum alicuius redintegrare—to re-inspire courage.

animus frangitur, affligitur, percellitur, debilitatur—their spirits are broken.

animos militum accendere—to fire with courage.

animi cadunt—their courage is ebbing.

animo cadere, deficere
animum demittere } to lose courage ; to despair.

erigere alicuius animum or *aliquem*—to encourage a person.

excitare animum iacentem et afflictum (opp. *frangere animum*)—to inspire the spiritless and prostrate with new vigour.

animo esse humili, demisso (more strongly *animo esse fracto, perculso et abiecto*) (Att. 3. 2)—to be cast down, discouraged, in despair.

inflatum, elatum esse aliqua re—to be proud, arrogant by reason of something.

insolentia, superbia inflatum esse—to be puffed up with pride.

agnos spiritus sibi sumere (B. G. 1. 33)—to be haughty.

spiritus alicuius reprimere—to lower a person's pride.

insolentius se efferre—to behave arrogantly.

elatus se gerere—to give oneself airs.

sibi sumere aliquid (Planc. 1. 3)—to take upon oneself.

contumacius se gerere—to display a proud obstinacy.

libera contumacia Socratis (Tusc. 1. 29. 71)—the frank but defiant demeanour of Socrates (before his judges).

6. PRESENCE OF MIND—COMPOSURE— DESPAIR

praesenti animo uti (*vid.* p. 84, note)—to possess presence of mind.

aequo (*aequissimo*) *animo ferre aliquid*—to endure a thing with (the greatest) sang-froid.

humane, modice, moderate, sapienter, constanter ferre aliquid
—to bear a thing with resignation, composure.

(*animo*) *paratum esse ad aliquid*—to be resigned to a thing.

omnia perpeti paratum esse—to be ready to endure anything.

ad omnes casus se comparare—to prepare oneself for all contingencies.

animum alicuius de statu, de gradu demovere (more strongly *depellere, deturbare*)—to disconcert a person.

<i>de statu suo</i> or <i>mentis deici</i> (Att. 16. 15) <i>de gradu deici, ut dicitur</i> ¹ <i>perturbari (animo)</i>	}	to lose one's composure; to be disconcerted.
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---	-------------------------------------------------

<i>sui (mentis) compōtem non esse</i> <i>non esse apud se</i> ² (Plaut. Mil. 4. 8. 26)	}	to lose one's head, be beside oneself.
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---	-------------------------------------------

mente vix constare (Tusc. 4. 17. 39)—to compose oneself with difficulty.

animo adesse (Sull. 11. 33)—to be quite unconcerned.

¹ These expressions are metaphors from the fencing-school. *gradus* is the position taken up by a combatant, so *gradu depelli, deici*=to be driven out of one's ground.

² Used especially in the comic poets.

ad se redire—to regain one's self-possession.

constantiam servare
mente consistere } to be calm, self-possessed.

*desperare*¹ *suis rebus*—to despair of one's position.

ad (summam) desperationem pervenire, adduci (B. C. 2. 42)
—to be plunged into the depths of despair.

desperatio rerum (omnium) (Catil. 2. 11. 25)—absolute
despair; a hopeless situation.

quid (de) me fiet? (Ter. Heaut. 4. 3. 37)—what will
become of me?

actum est de me—it's all over with me; I'm a lost man.

7. HOPE—EXPECTATION

spem habere
spe duci, niti, teneri } to cherish a hope.

magna me spes tenet (with Acc. c. Inf.) (Tusc. 1. 41. 97)
—I have great hopes that . . .

sperare videor—I flatter myself with the hope . . .

bene, optime (meliora) sperare de aliquo (Nep. Milt. 1. 1)—
to hope well of a person.

in spem venire, ingredi, adduci
spem concipere animo } to conceive a hope.

spem redintegrare (B. G. 7. 25)—to revive a hope.

spem alicui facere, afferre, inicere—to inspire any one with
hope.

¹ *desperare* is used, generally with *de*, more rarely with the accusative, in the meaning "to no longer count upon a thing," e.g. *reditum, pacem*; or with the dative, especially with *sibi, suis rebus, salutis, fortunae suae*. Note the use of *desperatus*, "abandoned," "given up," "despaired of," e.g. *desperati morbi* (Cic.), *aegroti ac paene desperata res publica* (Cic.)

ad spem aliquem excitare, erigere—to awaken new hope in some one.

in maximam spem aliquem adducere (Att. 2. 22. 3)—to inspire some one with the most brilliant hopes.

in meliorem spem, cogitationem aliquem inducere (Off. 2. 15. 53)—to induce some one to take a brighter view of things.

spem proponere alicui—to lead some one to expect . . .

spes affulget (Liv. 27. 28)—a ray of hope shines on us.

spem falsam alicui ostendere—to rouse a vain, groundless hope in some one's mind.

spem alicui adimere, tollere, auferre, eripere—to deprive a person of hope.

spem praecidere, incidere (Liv. 2. 15)—to cut off all hope.

spem perdere
spe deici, depelli, deturbari } to lose hope.

spes ad irritum cadit, ad irritum redigitur—expectation is overthrown.

spem abicere, deponere—to give up hoping.

inani, falsa spe duci, induci—to be misled by a vain hope.

spes me frustratur—hope has played me false.

spes extenuatur et evanescit—hope is vanishing by degrees.

spem alicuius fallere (Catil. 4. 11. 23)—to deceive a person's hopes.

spem alicui or alicuius minuere—to weaken, diminish a person's hope.

spem alicuius confirmare—to strengthen a person in his hopes.

spem alere—to entertain a hope.

spem habere in aliquo
spem suam ponere, collocare in
aliquo } to set one's hope on
 some one.

inter spem metumque suspensum animi esse—to hover between hope and fear.

praeter spem, expectationem—contrary to expectation.

*expectationem*¹ *sui facere, commovere*—to cause oneself to be expected.

expectationem explere (De Or. 1. 47. 205)—to fulfil expectation.

expectationi satisfacere, respondere—to respond to expectations.

expectatione alicuius rei pendere (animi) (Leg. Agr. 2. 25. 66)—to be in suspense, waiting for a thing.

expectatione torqueri, cruciari—to suffer torments of expectation, delay.

suspense animo expectare aliquid—to be waiting in suspense for . . .

aliquem in summam expectationem adducere (Tusc. 1. 17. 39)—to rouse a person's expectation, curiosity to the highest pitch.

8. PITY—PARDON—WANT OF FEELING— CRUELTY

misericordiam alicui commovere } to excite some one's pity.
misericordiam alicuius concitare }

ad misericordiam aliquem allicere, adducere, inducere—to arouse feelings of compassion in some one.

misericordia moveri, capi (De Or. 2. 47)—to be touched with pity.

misericordiam implorare—to implore a person's sympathy, pity.

¹ Att. 1. 4. 5 *crebras expectationes tui commoves*—i.e. you are leading us to expect your arrival.

indulgere vitiis alicuius—to be indulgent to a person's faults.

alicui veniam dare (alicuius rei)—to pardon some one.

*omnem humanitatem exuisse, ab-
iecisse (Lig. 5. 14)*
*omnem humanitatis sensum ami-
sisse* } to be quite insensible to
all feelings of human-
ity.

omnis humanitatis expertem esse—to be absolutely wanting in sympathy.

omnem humanitatem ex animo exstirpare (Amic. 13. 48)
—to stifle, repress all humane sentiments in one's mind.

nullam partem sensus habere—to possess not the least spark of feeling.

crudelitate uti (vid. p. 84, note)—to behave with cruelty.

crudelitatem exercere in aliquo
crudelitatem adhibere in aliquem } to exercise one's cruelty
on some one.

animadvertere in aliquem—to inflict punishment on a person.

9. LOVE—LONGING—ADMIRATION— ENTHUSIASM

carum habere aliquem
in amore habere aliquem
amore prosequi, amplecti aliquem } to feel affection for a
person.

carum esse alicui
carum atque iucundum esse alicui } to be dear to some one.

*adamasse aliquem (only in Perf. and Plup.) (Nep. Dion
2. 3)*—to become devoted to some one.

aliquem toto pectore,¹ *ut dicitur, amare* (Leg. 18. 49)—to love some one very dearly, with all one's heart.

aliquem ex animo or *ex animi sententia amare* (Q. Fr. 1. 1. 5)—to love deeply.

amore captum, incensum, inflammatum esse, ardere—to be fired with love.

amorem ex animo eicere—to banish love from one's mind.

mei ac deliciae alicuius (Fam. 8. 8. 1) } somebody's darling.
amores et deliciae alicuius

in amore et deliciis esse alicui (active in *deliciis habere aliquem*)—to be some one's favourite.

aliquem in sinu gestare (*aliquis est in sinu alicuius*) (Ter. Ad. 4. 5. 75)—to love and make a bosom friend of a person.

aliquis, aliquid mihi curae or *cordi*¹ *est*—somebody, something is never absent from my thoughts.

curae habere aliquid—to have laid something to heart ; to take an interest in a thing.

nihil antiquius or *prius habeo quam ut* (*nihil mihi antiquius* or *potius est, quam ut*)—there is nothing I am more interested in than . . .

desiderio alicuius rei teneri, affici (more strongly *flagrare, incensum esse*)—to long for a thing, yearn for it.

desiderio exardescere—to be consumed with longing.

admirationi esse

*admiratione affici*²

admirationem habere (Quintil. 8. 2. 6) } to be admired.

¹ *pectus* metaphorically only occurs in isolated phrases, e.g. *toto pectore, cogitare, tremere*. Its commonest substitute is *animus*. Similarly *cor* metaphorically is only used in the phrase *cordi est*.

² *admiratione affici* also means "to be filled with admiration."

magna est admiratio alicuius—some one is the object of much admiration.

admirationem alicui movere—to fill a person with astonishment.

admiratione incensum esse—to be fired with admiration.

admirabilia (= *παράδοξα*)—paradoxes ; surprising things.

studio ardere alicuius or *alicuius rei* (De Or. 2. 1. 1)—to have enthusiasm for a person or thing.

studio alicuius rei aliquem incendere—to make some one enthusiastic for a thing.

ardor, inflammatio animi, incitatio mentis, mentis vis incitatio—enthusiasm.

ardorem animi restinguere—to damp, chill enthusiasm.

ardor animi resēdit, consedit—his enthusiasm has abated, cooled down.

10. BELIEF—CONFIDENCE—LOYALTY—PROTECTION—PROMISE—VERACITY

(*fides, fiducia*)

*fidem*¹ *habere alicui*—to believe a person.

fidem alicuius rei facere alicui—to make some one believe a thing.

fidem tribuere, adiungere alicui rei—to believe in, trust in a thing.

¹ *fides* has six principal meanings : A. subjectively—(1) in an active sense, belief, confidence, which some one holds ; (2) passive, veracity, credit which one enjoys ; (3) neutral, good faith, sincerity, loyalty, conscientiousness, and especially of the protection which one expects by appealing to a man's loyalty. B. (4) active, ratification, sanction ; (5) passive, the thing promised, surety, guarantee ; (6) neutral, authenticity, certitude, truth of a thing. Cf. Haacke, Lat Stil. 40-41.

fidem abrogare, derogare alicui—to rob a person of his credit.

fidem alicuius imminuere, infirmare (opp. *confirmare*)—to weaken, destroy a man's credit.

fiduciam in aliquo ponere, collocare } to put confidence in
confidere alicui (but *aliqua re*) } some one.

fiduciam (alicuius rei) habere—to have great confidence in a thing.

fiducia sui (Liv. 25. 37)—self-confidence.

committere aliquid alicui or *alicuius fidei*—to entrust a thing to a person's good faith.

totum se committere, tradere alicui—to put oneself entirely in some one's hands.

fidem colere, servare—to preserve one's loyalty.

fidem praestare alicui—to keep faith with a person, keep one's word.

in fide manere (B. G. 7. 4. 5)—to remain loyal.

fidem laedere, violare, frangere—to break one's word.

fidem alicuius labefactare (Cluent. 60. 194)—to make a person waver in his loyalty.

de fide deducere or *a fide abducere aliquem*—to undermine a person's loyalty.

fide data et accepta (Sall. Jug. 81. 1)—having exchanged pledges, promises.

se conferre, se tradere, se permittere in alicuius fidem—to put oneself under some one's protection.

confugere ad aliquem, ad fidem alicuius—to flee for refuge to some one.

in fidem recipere aliquem (B. G. 2. 15. 1)—to take a person under one's protection.

fidem alicuius obsecrare, implorare—to implore some's one protection.

fidem addere alicui rei—to confirm, ratify, sanction something.

✓ *fidem publicam dare, interponere* (Sall. Iug. 32. 1)—to guarantee the protection of the state; to promise a safe-conduct.

fidem dare alicui (opp. *accipere*) (c. Acc. c. Inf.)—to give one's word that . . .

fidem servare (opp. *fallere*)—to keep one's word (not *tenere*).

fidem persolvere
fidem (promissum) praestare } to fulfil a promise.

fidem interponere (Sall. Iug. 32. 5)—to pledge one's word to . . .

fidem prodere }
fidem frangere } to break one's word.

promisso stare—to abide by one's undertaking.

fide obstrictum teneri (Pis. 13. 29)—to be bound by one's word; to be on one's honour.

fidem facere, afferre alicui rei (opp. *demere, de-, abrogare fidem*)—to make a thing credible.

aliquid fidem habet (*vid.* also *fides* under History, p. 112)
 —a thing finds credence, is credible.

sponsionem facere, sponsorem esse pro aliquo—to be security for some one.

praestare aliquem, aliquid, de aliqua re or Acc. c. Inf.—to be answerable for a person, a thing.

II. SUSPICION—PRESENTIMENT

suspicionem movere, excitare, inicere, dare alicui—to rouse a person's suspicions.

suspicionem habere de aliquo—to suspect a person.

suspicionem alicuius rei habere—to be suspected of a thing.

suspicio (alicuius rei) cadit in aliquem, pertinet ad aliquem

—suspicion falls on some one.

aliquem in suspicionem adducere (alicui), aliquem suspectum

reddere—to make a person suspected.

in suspicionem vocari, cadere—to become the object of suspicion.

in suspicionem alicui venire—to be suspected by some one.

suspicionem a se remove, depellere, propulsare (Verr. 3. 60.

140)—to clear oneself of a suspicion.

suspicionem ex animo delere—to banish all feeling of prejudice from the mind.

suspicio insidet in animo ejus } he is in a suspicious mood.
suspicio ei penitus inhaeret }

suspicio tenuissima, minima—the faintest suspicion.

a suspitione alicuius rei abhorrere—to have no presentiment of a thing.

animus praesāgit malum } my mind forebodes misfortune.
animo praesagio malum }

12. HATRED—JEALOUSY—ENVY

invisum esse alicui }
odio, invidiae esse alicui } to be hated by some one.
in invidia esse alicui }
in odio esse apud aliquem }

invidia flagrare, premi—to be detested.

in odium, in invidiam venire alicui }
invidiam colligere (aliqua re) } to incur a person's
alicuius odium subire, suscipere, in } hatred.
se convertere, sibi conflare }
in alicuius odium incurrere }

- in invidiam, odium (alicuius) vocare*
aliquem
in invidiam adducere aliquem
invidiam alicui conflare (Catil. 1. 9. 23)
invidiam, odium ex-, concitare alicui, in
aliquem
- } to make a person
odious, unpop-
ular.
- capitali odio dissidere ab aliquo* (De Am. 1. 2)—to be
 separated by a deadly hatred.
odium explere aliqua re (Liv. 4. 32)—to glut one's
 hatred.
odium implacabile suscipere in aliquem—to conceive an
 implacable hatred against a man.
odio or *invidia alicuius ardere*—to be consumed with
 hatred.
odium inveteratum habere in aliquem (Vat. 3. 6)—to
 cherish an inveterate animosity against some one.
odio inflammatum, accensum esse—to be fired with a
 passionate hatred.
odium alicuius inflammare—to kindle hatred in a person's
 heart ; to fill some one with hatred (not *implere*, *vid.*
 p. 146, note).
odium restinguere, exstinguere—to stifle, drown one's
 hatred.

13. DISCONTENT—ANGER—REVENGE—FURY

- aegre, graviter, moleste, indigne ferre aliquid*—to be dis-
 contented, vexed at a thing ; to chafe.
indignitas, atrocitas rei (Mur. 25. 51)—the revolting
 nature of an action.
o facinus indignum ! (Ter. Andr. 1. 1. 118)—monstrous !

ira incensum esse
iracundia inflammatum esse } to be fired with rage.
ira ardere (Flacc. 35. 88) }
iracundia exardescere, effervescere—to be transported with
 passion.

iracundia efferri—to be carried away by one's anger.

ira defervescit (Tusc. 4. 36. 78)—his anger cools.

virus acerbitalis suae effundere in
aliquem (De Amic. 23. 87) } to vent one's anger,
iram in aliquem effundere } spite on some one.
iram, bilem evomere in aliquem }

irae indulgere (Liv. 23. 3)—to give free play to one's anger.

praecipitem in iram esse (Liv. 23. 7)—to be short-tempered ;
 to be prone to anger.

animum explere—to cool one's anger.

iracundiam continere, cohibere, reprimere—to restrain,
 master one's passion.

iram restinguere, sedare—to calm one's anger.

animum alicuius ab iracundia revocare—to prevent some
 one from growing angry, appease his anger,

stomachum, bilem alicui movere—to excite a person's wrath.

ulcisci aliquem,¹ *poenas expetere ab aliquo*—to revenge
 oneself on some one.

ulcisci aliquid, poenas alicuius rei expetere—to revenge
 oneself for a thing.

ulcisci aliquem pro aliquo or pro } to revenge oneself on
aliqua re } another for a thing
poenas alicuius or alicuius rei } or on some one's be-
repetere ab aliquo } half.

¹ *ulcisci aliquem* also means to avenge some one ; to exact satisfaction on his behalf.

iniurias persequi (Verr. 2. 3. 9)—to avenge an insult.
impellere aliquem in furorem—to make some one furious.
furore inflammari, incendi—to become furious.
furore incensus, abreptus, impulsus—in a transport of rage.
indignatio aliquem incedit—to be filled with indignation.
indignationes (Liv. 25. 1. 9)—signs of irritation, of discontent.

X. VIRTUES AND VICES

I. VIRTUE—MORALITY

vita honesta (turpis)—a virtuous (immoral) life.
honesta expetere; turpia fugere—to follow virtue; to flee from vice.
virtute praeditum, ornatum esse (opp. *vitiis obrütum esse*)—to be virtuous.
virtutem (iustitiam, pietatem) colere—to cultivate virtue.
viam virtutis ingredi (Off. 1. 32. 118)—to walk in the ways of virtue.
*omnia consilia et facta ad virtutem referre*¹ (Phil. 10. 10. 20)—to make virtue the standard in every thought and act.
virtutem sequi, virtutis studiosum esse—to strive to attain virtue.
virtutis perfectae perfecto munere fungi (Tusc. 1. 45. 109)—to live a perfect life.

¹ For "thoughts and deeds," cf. Or. 3. 43. 182 *mores instituta et facta*; Prov. Cons. 8. 20 *consilia et facta*; Fin. 2. 14. 5 *studia et facta*; Verr. 5. 14. 35 *mentes hominum et cogitationes*.

virtutem pristinam retinere } to live as scrupulously
nihil ex pristina virtute remittere } moral a life as ever.
*summum bonum*¹ *in virtute ponere*—to consider virtue the
 highest good.

virtus hoc habet, ut . . .—this is a characteristic of
 virtue, it . . .

a virtute discedere or *deficere* } to deviate from the path of
honestatem deserere } virtue.

a maiorum virtute desciscere, degenerare, deflectere—to
 deteriorate.

a parentibus degenerare—to degenerate (from one's ances-
 tors).

corrumpi, depravari—to be demoralised, corrupted.

excitare aliquem ad virtutem—to rouse in some one an
 enthusiasm for virtue.

bonitas (Fin. 5. 29. 65)—kindheartedness.

naturae bonitas (Off. 1. 32. 118)—innate goodness, kind-
 ness.

naturae bona—natural advantages.

2. VICE—CRIME

omni vitio carere—to be free from faults.

vitia erumpunt (in aliquem) (De Amic. 21. 76)—his vices
 betray themselves.

animum vitiis dedere—to abandon oneself to vice.

vitiis, sceleribus contaminari or *se contaminare* (Off. 3. 8.
 37)—to be tainted with vice.

vitiis, sceleribus inquinatum, contaminatum, obrutum esse—
 to be vicious, criminal.

¹ Note too *finis bonorum et malorum*=the highest good and the
 greatest evil.

vitia exstirpare et funditus tollere—to eradicate vice.

vita omnibus flagitiis,¹ *vitiis dedita* } a life defiled by every
vita omnibus flagitiis inquinata } crime.

natura proclivem esse ad vitia—to have a natural propensity to vice.

scelera moliri (Att. 7. 11)—to meditate crime.

scelus facere, committere—to commit crime.

facinus facere, committere—to do a criminal deed.

scelere se devincire, se obstringere,
astringi } to commit a crime and so
scelus (in se) concipere, suscipere } make oneself liable to
the consequences of it.

scelus edere in aliquem (Sest. 26. 58)—to commit a crime against some one.

scelus scelere cumulare (Catil. 1. 6. 14)—to heap crime on crime.

*scelus*¹ *supplicio expiare*—to expiate a crime by punishment.

3. DESIRE—PASSION—SELF-CONTROL

cupiditate alicuius rei accensum, inflammatum esse—to be fired with desire of a thing.

cupiditate alicuius rei ardere, flagrare—to have an ardent longing for a thing.

cupiditatem alicuius accendere
aliquem ad cupiditatem incitare
aliquem cupiditate inflammare } to rouse a person's
interest, cupidity.

¹ *flagitium* is a crime against oneself, e.g. drunkenness. *scelus* is a sin against society at large, e.g. theft, murder. *nefas* a sin against God, e.g. sacrilege, parricide. *facinus* any unusual action, then generally a crime, outrage.

cupiditatibus occaecari (Fin. 1. 10. 33)—to be blinded by passions.

libidine ferri—to be carried away by one's passions.

se (totum) libidinibus dedere—to abandon oneself (entirely) to debauchery.

cupiditatibus servire, pārēre—to be the slave of one's desires.

praecipitem ferri aliqua re (Verr. 5. 46. 121)—to be carried away by something.

<i>homo impotens sui</i>	}	a man of no self-control,
<i>homo effrenatus, intemperans</i>		self-indulgent.

<i>sibi imperare or continere et</i>	}	to have self-control; to
<i>coërcere se ipsum</i>		restrain oneself, master
<i>animum regere, coërcere, cohibere</i>		one's inclinations.
<i>animum vincere</i> (Marcell. 3. 8)		

<i>imperare cupiditatibus</i>	}	to overcome one's passions.
<i>coërcere, cohibere, continere,</i>		
<i>domitas habere cupiditates</i>		

refrenare cupiditates, libidines—to bridle one's desires.

<i>effrenatae cupiditates</i>	}	unrestrained, unbridled lust.
<i>indomitae animi cupiditates</i>		

cupiditates explere, satiare—to satisfy one's desires.

libidinem alicuius excitare—to arouse some one's lust.

libido dominatur (Or. 65. 219)—the passions win the day.

libido consēdit—the storm of passion has abated.

cupiditates deferbuerunt (Cael. 18. 43)—the passions have cooled down.

animi perturbationes extirpare—to eradicate passion from the mind.

4. WRONG—INSULT—OUTRAGE—OFFENCE (cf. p. 57)

iniuriam inferre, facere alicui } to wrong a person.
iniuria afficere aliquem

iniuria lacerare aliquem—to provoke a person by a gratuitous insult.

iniuria abstinere (Off. 3. 17. 72)—to refrain from doing a wrong, an injustice.

iniuriam accipere—to be the victim of an injustice.

iniuriam ferre, pati—to suffer wrong.

iniurias defendere, repellere, propulsare—to repel an injury.

iniurias neglegere—to leave a wrong unpunished, to ignore it.

ab iniuria aliquem defendere—to protect any one from wrong.

satisfacere alicui pro (de) iniuriis—to give some one satisfaction for an injury.

contumelia aliquem afficere—to insult some one.

voces (verba) contumeliosae } insulting expressions.
verborum contumeliae

contumeliosis vocibus prosequi aliquem (vid. p. 88, note)—to use insulting expressions to any one.

maledictis aliquem onerare, lacerare—to heap abuse on some one.

offendere aliquem, alicuius animum }
offendere apud aliquem (Cluent. 23. 63) } to hurt some one's feelings.
in offensionem alicuius incurrere (Verr. 1. 12. 35)

offendi aliqua re (animus offenditur)—to feel hurt by something.

offendere in aliquo (Mil. 36. 99)—to have something to say against a person, to object to him.

*offendere*¹ *in aliqua re* (Cluent. 36. 98)—to take a false step in a thing; to commit an indiscretion.

offensionem habere—to give offence to, to shock a person (used of things, *vid.* p. 65).

res habet aliquid offensionis—there is something repulsive about the thing.

5. VIOLENCE—AMBUSCADE—THREATS

vim adhibere, facere alicui—to use violence against some one.

vim inferre alicui—to do violence to a person.

vim et manus afferre alicui (Catil. 1. 8. 21)—to kill with violence.

vim vi depellere
vi vim illatam defendere } to meet force by force.

insidias collocare, locare (Mil. 10. 27)—to set an ambuscade.

insidias alicui parare, facere, struere, instruere, tendere—to waylay a person.

aliquem in insidiis locare, collocare, ponere—to place some one in ambush.

aliquem in insidias elicere, inducere—to draw some one into an ambush.

subsidiere in insidiis (Mil. 19. 49)—to place oneself in ambush.

¹ Notice too *offendere caput* (Quintil. 6. 3. 67), *pedem* (B. Hisp. 23), to strike one's head, foot against anything; *offendere aliquem imparatum* (Fam. 2. 3), to find some one unprepared, cf. *καταλαμβάνειν*.

minitari (*minari*) *alicui mortem, crucem et tormenta, bellum*
—to threaten some one with death, crucifixion,
torture, war.

minitari alicui igni ferroque (Phil. 13. 9. 21)—to threaten
with fire and sword.

*denuntiare*¹ *bellum, caedem* (Sest. 20. 46)—to threaten
war, carnage.

minas iacere, iactare }
minis uti } to use threats.

6. APPEARANCE—DECEIT—FALSEHOOD— DERISION

speciem alicuius rei habere—to have the appearance of
something.

speciem alicuius rei praeberere }
*speciem prae se ferre*² } to give the impression of . . .
have the outward aspect
of . . .

in speciem }
specie (De Amic. 13. 47) } apparently ; to look at.
per speciem (alicuius rei) }

per simulationem, simulatione alicuius rei—under pretext,
pretence of . . .

simulare morbum—to pretend to be ill.

*dissimulare*³ *morbum*—to pretend not to be ill.

¹ "Threaten" in the sense of to be at hand, to be imminent, is rendered by some such word as *imminere, impendere, instare*, e.g. *bellum imminet*. For the meaning to seem likely, to promise, cf. *coniuratio rem publicam perversura videtur*, the conspiracy threatens to overthrow the state.

² *prae se ferre* followed by Acc. and Inf. = to manifest, display, e.g. *Romanum esse semper prae me tuli*.

³ *simulo* = I pretend to be what I am not, cf. *ἀλαζών*, a braggart ; *dissimulo* = I pretend not to be what I am, cf. *εἴρων*, a mock-modest person. *Quae non sunt simulo, quae sunt ea dissimulantur*.

aliquis simulat aegrum or *se esse aegrum*—some one feigns illness.

aliter sentire ac loqui (*aliud sentire, aliud loqui*)—to think one thing, say another; to conceal one's opinions.

per dolum (B. G. 4. 13)—by craft.

dolis et fallaciis (Sall. Cat. 11. 2)—by the aid of fraud and lies.

sine fuco ac fallaciis (Att. 1. 1. 1)—without any disguise, frankly.

verba dare alicui (Att. 15. 16)—to deceive a person, throw dust in his eyes.

mendacium dicere
falsa (pro veris) dicere } to tell lies.

ludere, irridere, deridere aliquem
illudere alicui or *in aliquem* } to make sport of, rally a
(more rarely *aliquem*) } person.

ludibrio esse alicui—to serve as some one's butt.

in ludibrium verti (Tac. Ann. 12. 26)—to become an object of ridicule; to be laughed at.

omnibus artibus aliquem ludificari, eludere—to fool a person thoroughly.

per ludibrium—in sport, mockery.

7. DUTY—INCLINATION

officium suum facere, servare,
colere, tueri, exsequi, praestare
officio suo satisfacere (Div. in } to do one's duty.
Caec. 14. 47)
officio suo fungi }

omnes officii partes exsequi } to fulfil one's duty in every
nullam officii partem deserere } detail.

diligentem esse in retinendis officiis—to be exact, punctual
 in the performance of one's duty.

officium suum deserere, neglegere }
ab officio discedere } to neglect one's duty.
de, ab officio decedere }
officio suo deesse (Fam. 7. 3) }

ad officium redire—to return to one's duties.

in officio manere (Att. 1. 3)—to remain faithful to one's
 duty.

contra officium est c. Inf.—it is a breach of duty to . . .

ab officio abduci, avocari—to let oneself be perverted
 from one's duty.

*salvo*¹ *officio* (Off. 3. 1. 4)—without violating, neglecting
 one's duty.

*multa et magna inter nos officia*² *intercedunt* (Fam. 13. 65)
 —we are united by many mutual obligations.

in aliquem officia conferre }
aliquem officiis suis complecti, } to be courteous, obliging to
prosequi } some one.
officiosum esse in aliquem }

litterae officii or *humanitatis plenae*—a most courteous
 letter.

¹ Notice *salvis legibus* (Fam. 1. 4), without breaking the law ;
salva fide (Off. 3. 4. 44), without breaking one's word.

² *officium* is used of anything which one feels bound to do, either on
 moral grounds or from a desire to please others (especially those in
 authority). Thus the word denotes not merely duty, sense of duty,
 faithful performance of duty, submissiveness (cf. xvi. 13), but also
 courteous, obliging behaviour, complaisance, mark of respect.
 Objectively it has the meaning of an office, service, command, e.g.
officium maritimum.

studere alicui rei, studiosum esse
alicuius rei
studio alicuius rei teneri
propensum, proclivem esse ad
aliquid (opp. alienum, aversum
esse, abhorreere ab aliqua re) } to have an inclination
 for a thing.
studiis suis obsequi (De Or. 1. 1. 3)—to follow one's
 inclinations.
sibi or ingenio suo indulgere (Nep. Chabr. 3)—to indulge
 one's caprice.

8. REASON—CONSCIENCE—REMORSE

rationis participem (opp. exper-
tem) esse
ratione praeditum esse, uti } to be endowed with
 reason.
prudenter, considerate, consilio agere (opp. temere, nullo con-
silio, nulla ratione)—to act reasonably, judiciously.
sapere (Off. 2. 14. 48)—to be a man of sense, judg-
 ment.
resipiscere (Att. 4. 5. 2)
ad sanitatem reverti, redire
ad bonam frugem se recipere } to recover one's reason, be
 reasonable again.
ad sanitatem adducere, revocare aliquem—to bring some
 one back to his senses.
satin (= satisne) sanus es?—are you in your right mind?
rationi repugnare—to be contrary to all reason.
conscientia recta, recte facti (fac-
torum), virtutis, bene actae
vitalis, rectae voluntatis
mens bene sibi conscia } a good conscience.

conscientia mala or *peccatorum,*
culpa, *sceleris*, *delicti*
animus male sibi conscius } a guilty conscience.

nullius culpa *sibi conscius esse*—to be conscious of no ill deed.

conscientia morderi (Tusc. 4. 20. 45)—to be conscience-stricken.

conscientiae malefactorum stimulant aliquem—his guilty conscience gives him no rest.

conscientia mala angere, excruciar } to be tormented by re-
(mens scelerum furiis agitatur) } morse.

conscientia recte factorum erigi—to congratulate oneself on one's clear conscience.

Furiae agitant et vexant aliquem—the Furies harass and torment some one.

9. MEASURE—STANDARD—LIMIT— MODERATION

modum tenere, retineri, servare, adhibere—to observe moderation, be moderate.

omnia modice agere—to be moderate in all things, commit no excess.

modum facere, statuere, constituere alicui rei or *alicuius rei*
 —to set a limit to a thing.

modum transire
extra modum prodire
*ultra modum*¹ *progredi* } to pass the limit.

¹ Only Livy and subsequent writers use *modum excedere*, and in the same way *supra modum*.

metiri, ponderare, aestimare, iudicare aliquid (ex) aliqua re dirigere or referre aliquid ad aliquam rem } to measure something by the standard of something else ; to make something one's criterion.

fines certos terminosque constituere—to impose fixed limitations.

terminis circumscribere aliquid—to set bounds to a thing, limit it.

moderatum, continentem esse moderatum se praebere temperantia uti } to behave with moderation.

moderationem, modum adhibere in aliqua re moderari aliquid (Flacc. 5. 12) } to show moderation in a matter.

modice ac sapienter—with moderation and judgment.

sine modo ; nullo modo adhibito—with no moderation.

extra, praeter modum—beyond all measure.

mediocritatem tenere (Off. 1. 25. 89)—to observe the golden mean.

10. MORALS—IMMORALITY—PRINCIPLES— CHARACTER

homo bene (male) moratus—a moral (immoral) man.

homo perditus—a depraved, abandoned character.

praecepta de moribus or de virtute—moral precepts.

morum praecepta tradere alicui de virtute praecipere alicui } to give moral advice, rules of conduct.

mores corrupti or perditum—moral corruption (not *corruptela morum*).

tam perditis or *corruptis moribus*—amongst such moral depravity.

mores in dies magis labuntur (also with *ad*, e.g. *ad molitiam*)—immorality is daily gaining ground.

severus morum castigator—a stern critic of morals.

aliquid abhorret a meis moribus (opp. *insitum* [*atque innatum*] *est animo* or *in animo alicuius*)—something is contrary to my moral sense, goes against my principles.

consilia et facta (cf. p. 164, note)—thought and deed.

institutum tenere—to remain true to one's principles.

ratione ; *animi quodam iudicio*—on principle.

vitae ratio bene ac sapienter instituta—a sound and sensible system of conduct.

meae vitae rationes ab ineunte aetate susceptae (Imp. Pomp. 1. 1)—the principles which I have followed since I came to man's estate.

*certas rationes in agendo*¹ *sequi*—to follow fixed principles of conduct.

omnia temere agere, nullo
iudicio uti
caeco impetu ferri } to have no principles.

natura et mores ; *vita moresque* ; *indoles animi ingeniique* ;
 or simply *ingenium, indoles, natura, mores*—character.

vir constans, gravis (opp. *homo inconstans, levis*)—a man of character, with a strong personality.

sibi constare, constantem esse—to be consistent.

¹ Do not translate "to act, behave, conduct oneself" by *agere* without an object or an accompanying adverb, e.g. *bene, recte agere* ; however, with the gerundive the adverb may be omitted, e.g. *agendum est, tempus agendi, celeritas in agendo*.

animo mobili esse (Fam. 5. 2. 10)—to be inconsistent, changeable.

aliquid est proprium alicuius—something is a characteristic of a man.

mobilitas et levitas animi—inconsistency ; changeability.

XI. RELIGION

I. GOD—WORSHIP

numen (deorum) divinum—the sovereign power of the gods.

dei propitii (opp. *irati*)—the favour of heaven.

superi ; inferi—the gods of the upper, lower world.

inferi (*Orcus* and *Tartarus* only poetical)—the world below.

ad inferos descendere—to descend to the world below.

apud inferos esse—to be in the lower world.

aliquem ab inferis or *a mortuis evocare, excitare* (passive *ab inferis exsistere*)—to summon some one from the dead.

deos sancte, pie venerari—to be an earnest worshipper of the gods.

deum rite (summa religione) colere—to honour the gods with all due ceremonial (very devoutly).

cultus dei, deorum (N. D. 2. 3. 8)—worship of the gods ; divine service.

sacra, res divinae, religiones, caerimoniae—ritual ; ceremonial.

rebus divinis interesse (B. G. 6. 13)—to take part in divine service (of the priest).

audientium animos religione perfundere (Liv. 10. 388)—to fill the souls of one's audience with devotion.

religionem ex animis extrahere (N. D. 1. 43. 121)—to banish devout sentiment from the minds of others.

omnem religionem tollere, delere—to annihilate all religious feeling.

religionem labefactare (*vid.* p. 50, note)—to shake the foundations of religion.

religione obstrictos habere multitudinis animos (Liv. 6. 1. 10)—to have power over the people by trading on their religious convictions.

religionem alicui afferre, inicere, incutere—to inspire some one with religious scruples.

<i>aliquid religioni habere</i> or <i>in</i>	} to make a thing a matter of
<i>religionem vertere</i>	
<i>aliquid in religionem alicui</i>	
<i>venit</i>	

conscience, be scrupulous about a thing.

nulla religio—absence of scruples, unconscientiousness.

religionem externam suscipere—to embrace a strange religion.

novas religiones instituere—to introduce a new religion, a new cult.

bellum pro religionibus susceptum—a religious war.

violatas caerimonias inexpiabili religione sancire (Tusc. 1. 12. 27)—to invoke an irrevocable curse on the profanation of sacred rites.

*iusiurandum dare alicui*¹—to swear an oath to a person.

ex animi mei sententiā iuro—I swear on my conscience.

iureiurando aliquem astringere—to bind some one by an oath.

¹ *sacramentum dicere alicui* and *apud aliquem*=to take in some one's presence an oath to the standard, a military oath.

iureiurando aliquem adigere—to make some one take an oath.

iureiurando ac fide se obstringere, ut—to promise an oath to . . .

iureiurando teneri (Off. 3. 27. 100)—to be bound by oath.
iusiurandum (religionem) servare, conservare—to keep one's oath.

periurium facere ; peierare—to commit perjury, perjure oneself.

iusiurandum violare—to break one's oath.

3. BELIEF—UNBELIEF—SUPERSTITION

opinio dei—belief in God.

deum esse credimus—we believe in the existence of a God.

deos esse negare—to deny the existence of the gods.

insitas (innatas) dei cognitiones habere (N. D. 1. 17. 44)—to have innate ideas of the Godhead ; to believe in the Deity by intuition.

omnibus innatum est et in animo quasi insculptum esse deum
 —belief in God is part of every one's nature.

natura in omnium animis notionem dei impressit (N. D. 1. 16. 43)—Nature has implanted in all men the idea of a God.

impietas—unbelief.

qui deum esse negat—an atheist.

superstitio mentes occupavit (Verr. 4. 51. 113)—superstition has taken possession of their souls.

superstitione imbutum esse—to be tinged with superstition.

superstitione teneri, constrictum esse, obligatum esse—to be the slave of superstition.

superstitionem funditus tollere—to absolutely annihilate superstition.

superstitionem radicitus or *penitus evellere*—to destroy superstition root and branch.

formidines—superstitious fears ; phantoms.

4. PRAYERS—WISHES—VOWS

precari aliquid a deo
precari deum, deos
supplicare deo (Sall. Jug. 63. 1)
adhibere deo preces } to pray to God.

præire verba (*carmen*) (Liv. 31. 17)—to read prayers for the congregation to repeat.

(*supinas*) *manus*¹ *ad caelum tendere*—to raise the hands to heaven (attitude of prayer).

favete ore, linguis = *εὐφμεῖτε*—maintain a devout silence (properly, utter no ill-omened word).

preces facere—to pray.

grates, laudes agere dis immortalibus—to thank, glorify the immortal gods.

testari deos (Sull. 31. 86)—to call the gods to witness.

contestari deos hominesque—to call gods and men to witness.

dis bene iuvantibus (Fam. 7. 20. 2)—with the help of the gods.

quod deus bene vertat ²—and may God grant success !

¹ *supinus* = *ὑπίστος*, bent backwards ; *supinae manus*, with the palms turned up. The opposite of *supinus* is *pronus*, e.g. *puerum imponere equo pronom in ventrem, postea sedentem* (Varr.) ; *pecora quae natura prona finxit* (Sall.)

² Note that these clauses with *quod* are parenthetical.

quod di immortales omen avertant! (Phil. 44. 11)—and may heaven avert the omen! heaven preserve us from this!

quod abominor! (*procul absit!*)—God forbid!

di prohibeant, di meliora!—heaven forbend!

*quod bonum, faustum, felix fortunatumque sit!*¹ (Div. 1. 45. 102)—may heaven's blessing rest on it!

precari alicui bene (*male*) or *omnia bona* (*mala*), *salutem*—to bless (*curse*) a person.

vota facere, nuncupare, suscipere, concipere—to make a vow.

vota solvere, persolvere, reddere—to accomplish, pay a vow.

voti damnari, compōtem fieri—to have to pay a vow; to obtain one's wish.

5. SACRIFICE—FESTIVAL

sacra, sacrificium facere (ἱερὰ)
 ῥέζειν), *sacrificare*
rem divinam facere (*dis*) } to sacrifice.

ture et odoribus incensis—with incense and perfumes.

rebus divinis (*rite*) *perpetratis*—after having performed the sacrifice (with due ritual).

sacrificium statum (*solemne*) (Tusc. 1. 47. 113)—a periodically recurring (annual) sacrifice.

sacra polluere et violare—to profane sacred rites.

victimās (oxen), *hostias* (smaller animals, especially sheep)
immolare, securi ferire, caedere, mactare—to slaughter victims.

deos placare (B. G. 6. 15)—to appease the anger of the gods.

manes expiare (Pis. 7. 16)—to appease the manes, make sacrifice for departed souls.

¹ Sometimes abbreviated q. b. f. f. s.

pro victimis homines immolare—to sacrifice human victims.
parentare (Leg. 2. 21. 54)—to make a sacrifice on the tomb of one's ancestors.

libare—to offer libations.

diem festum agere (of an individual)
diem festum celebrare (of a larger number)

} to keep, celebrate a festival.

supplicationem indicere ad omnia pulvinaria (Liv. 27. 4)—to proclaim a public thanksgiving at all the street-shrines of the gods.

supplicationem quindecim dierum decernere (Phil. 14. 14. 37)—to decree a public thanksgiving for fifteen days.

supplicationem habere (Liv. 22. 1. 15)—to celebrate a festival of thanksgiving.

lectisternium facere, habere (Liv. 22. 1. 18)—to hold a lectisternium.

6. ORACLE—PRODIGIES—AUSPICES— PRESAGE

oraculum consulere—to consult an oracle.

oraculum petere (ab aliquo)—to ask for an oracular response.

mittere Delphos consultum—to send and consult the oracle at Delphi.

oraculum dare, edere
responsum dare (vid. p. 131, note), respondere

} to give an oracular response.

oraculum Pythium (Pythicum)
vox Pythia (Pythica) (Liv. 1. 56)

} an oracle given by the Delphian Apollo (Apollo Pythius).

*prodigia procurare*¹ (Liv. 22. 1)—to avert by expiatory sacrifices the effect of ominous portents.

libros Sibyllinos adire, consulere, inspicere—to consult the Sibylline books.

augurium agere,² *auspicari* (N. D. 2. 4. 11)—to take the auspices, observe the flight of birds.

de caelo servare (Att. 4. 3. 3)—to observe the sky (*i.e.* the flight of birds, lightning, thunder, etc.)

*aves (alites, oscines)*³ *addicunt alicui* (opp. *abdicunt aliquid*)—the omens are favourable to some one.

augures obnuntiant (consuli) (Phil. 2. 33. 83)—the augurs announce an unfavourable sign.

auspicato (rem gerere, urbem condere)—after having duly taken the auspices.

omen accipere (opp. *improbare*)—to accept as a happy omen.

accipere, vertere aliquid in omen—to interpret something as an omen.

faustis ominibus—with favourable omens.

omen infaustum, triste—an evil omen; presage of ill.

¹ *procurare*, a technical term of religious ceremonial—to avert by expiation; to take the necessary measures, observe the proper ceremony for appeasing the anger of the gods.

² Not *auspicia habere*, which means to have the right to take the auspices. As this right was usually combined with the right to command, we find such phrases as *ponere auspicia*, to give up a command; *imperio auspicioque alicuius*, *auspiciis alicuius*, under some one's command.

³ In the science of augury, *alites* denoted birds which gave omens by their flight; *oscines* those which gave them by their cries.

XII. DOMESTIC LIFE

I. THE HOUSE AND ITS DIFFERENT PARTS

domus necessariis rebus instructa—a comfortably-furnished house.

*domus ruina*¹ *impendet*
domus collapsura, corruitura } the house threatens to fall in
 (esse) *videtur* } (vid. p. 170, note).

domus subita ruina collapsa est—the house suddenly fell in ruins.

domum demoliri (Top. 4. 22)—to demolish, raze a house.

*domus non omnes capit*² (*χωρεῖν*)—the house is not large enough for all.

domum frequentare (Sall. Cat. 14. 7)—to be a regular visitor at a house.

domus rimas agit—the house walls are beginning to crack.

apud eum sic fui tamquam domi meae (Fam. 13. 69)—I felt quite at home in his house.

apud aliquem esse—to be at some one's house.

tectum subire—to enter the house.

tecto, (in) domum suam aliquem recipere (opp. *prohibere aliquem tecto, domo*)—to welcome to one's house (opp. to shut one's door against some one).

domo pedem non efferre—to never set foot out of doors.

¹ *ruina* = fall, overthrow (metaphor. e.g. *ruina rei publicae, ruinae fortunarum*, Catil. 1. 6. 14). In plur. it is used of the ruins, débris resulting from an overthrow, e.g. *urbs strata ruinis*, a town in ruins; *fumantes ruinae urbis*. For "ruins" in the sense of remains of old buildings use *parietinae*.

² Also metaph. e.g. *Macedonia te non capit*.

pedem limine efferre—to cross the threshold.

foras exire (Plaut. Amph. 1. 2. 35)—to go out of the house.

foras mittere aliquem—to turn some one out of the house.

in publico—in the streets.

in publicum prodire (Verr. 2. 1. 31)—to show oneself in the streets, in public.

publico carere, se abstinere
domi se tenere } to never appear in public.

*deducere*¹ *aliquem de domo*—to escort a person from his house.

*pro aris*² *et focus pugnare, certare, dimicare*—to fight for hearth and home.

domi (opp. *foris*)—at home ; in one's native country.

ostium, fores pulsare—to knock at the door.

ostium, fores aperire, claudere—to open, shut the door.

fores obserare—to bolt the door.

ianuam effringere, revellere—to burst open the door.

valvas (portam) obstruere—to barricade a door (a city-gate).

¹ Notice too *deducere coloniam* ; *deducere naves*, to launch ships, opposed to *subducere*=to beach a boat ; *deducere adolescentes ad virum clarissimum* (De Am. 1. 1) ; *deducere de sententia aliquem* ; *rem in eum locum deducere, ut . . .* ; *de capite deducere* (opp. *addere*) *quod pernumeratum est*=to subtract from the capital the amount paid ; *deducere aliquem*, to escort a person from his province to Rome.

² At Rome there were altars not only in the temples but also in the streets and in private houses. In a house there were usually two—one in the court, the altar of the *Penates* ; another in the *atrium* on a small hearth (*focus*), this was the altar of the *Lares*. Hence *arae focique*=the altars and hearths of the *Lares* and *Penates*.

2. DOMESTIC MATTERS—PROPERTY

rem domesticam, familiarem administrare, regere, curare—
to keep house.

rem or *opes habere, bona possidere, in bonis esse*—to possess
means ; to be well off.

opibus, divitiis, bonis, facultatibus abundare—to be very
rich.

*rem bene (male) gerere*¹ (*vid.*) to manage one's affairs,
p. 261)
rem familiarem tueri } household, property well
or ill.

rem familiarem neglegere—to neglect, mismanage one's
household matters.

diligentem, frugi esse—to be economical.

diligens paterfamilias—a careful master of the house.

*frugi*² (opp. *nequam*) *servus*—a good, useful slave.

severum imperium in suis exercere, tenere (De Sen. 11. 37)—
to be a strict disciplinarian in one's household.

in possessionem alicuius rei venire—to come into the
possession of something.

in possessionem alicuius rei invadere—to take forcible
possession of a thing.

expellere aliquem domo, possessionibus pellere—to turn a
person out of his house, his property.

¹ *rem gerere* = generally to manage one's affairs. Then specially
—(1) to do business (of commercial men); (2) to administer one's
estate; (3) to hold a command (of a general in the field). *res*
gerere plur. = to carry out, accomplish undertakings, used specially
of political activity.

² *frugi* is an old case-form (either locative or dative) from an
obsolete nominative *frux*. Cf. *bonae frugi esse*, to be useful; *ad*
bonam frugem se recipere, to come to one's senses (Cael. 12. 28).

demovere, deicere aliquem de possessione—to dispossess a person.

*exturbare aliquem omnibus
fortunis, e possessionibus
evertere aliquem bonis, for-
tunis patriis* } to drive a person out of house
and home.

possessione alicuius rei cedere alicui (Mil. 27. 75)—to give up a thing to some one else.

*res, quae moveri possunt; res moventes*¹ (Liv. 5. 25. 6)—movable, personal property.

fundi—property in land; real property.

3. HABITATION—CLOTHING

*habitare*² *in domo alicuius, apud aliquem* (Acad. 2. 36. 115)—to live in some one's house.

domicilium (sedem ac domicilium) habere in aliquo loco—to dwell in a certain place.

sedem collocare alicubi (Rep. 2. 19. 34) } to take up one's abode in
*sedem ac domicilium (fortunas
suas) constituere alicubi* } a place, settle down
considerare alicubi (Att. 5. 14. 1) } somewhere.

¹ *res moventes; movere* is apparently sometimes used intransitively, e.g. *terra movet* (Liv. 35. 40; 40. 59), but here *moventes* is probably the participle of the middle *moveri* (cf. *res quae moveri possunt*). For parallel examples of a middle verb with a participle present or a gerundive cf. Fin. 2. 10. 31 *utra voluptate stante an movente?* Suet. Claud. 28 *lecticam per urbem vehendi ius*; Or. 2. 71. 287 *ceteris in campo exercentibus*, etc.

² *habitare locum* is not used, *locus habitatur* is. On the other hand, we find *incolere Asiam*, etc., or with preps. *cis, trans, inter, prope, circum*—*incolere* being used intransitively, e.g. B. G. 1. 1. 4 *Germani qui trans Rhenum incolunt*. *incolere* is used of a number of people, *habitare* of individuals.

multitudinem in agris collocare—to settle a large number of people in a country.

domo emigrare (B. G. 1. 31)—to emigrate.

domo profūgus (Liv. 1. 1)—homeless.

induere vestem (without *sibi*)—to dress oneself.

vestem mutare (opp. *ad vestitum suum redire*) (Planc. 12. 29)—to go into mourning.

vestimenta (et calceos) mutare—to change one's clothes (and shoes).

vestitus obsoletus, tritus—cast-off clothing.

vestis stragula or simply *vestis*—drapery.

togatus,¹ *palliatu*s—with a toga, cloak on.

pannis obsitus—in rags.

paludatus, sagatus—in a military cloak (*paludamentum*, of a general; *sagum*, of soldiers).

togam virilem (puram) sumere—to assume the *toga virilis*.

vestem ponere ² (*exuere*)—to undress.

4. FOOD—DRINK

cibum sumere, capere—to take food.

cibum concoquere, conficere—to digest food.

multi cibi esse, edacem esse—to be a great eater.

cibum apponere, ponere alicui—to set food before a person.

corpus curare (cibo, vino, somno)—to refresh oneself, minister to one's bodily wants.

¹ *togatus*=a Roman citizen as opposed to—(1) a foreigner, (2) a soldier, (3) *tunicatus*, which is used of the lower classes who actually had no *toga* but simply *tunica*, cf. Hor. Ep. 1. 7. 65 *tunicatus popellus*.

² *vestem deponere*=to give up wearing a garment, never use it again. Notice too *ponere arma*, to put down one's weapons; *ponere librum (de manibus)*, to lay aside a book (not *deponere*, which would mean to lay aside for good. Cf. viii. 9).

ventri deditum esse—to be the slave of one's appetite.

cibo se abstinere—to abstain from all nourishment.

ieiunium servare—to fast.

tantum cibi et potionis adhibere quantum satis est—to take only enough food to support life.

cibus delicatus—delicacies.

panis cibarius—ordinary bread.

vino deditum esse, indulgere—to be given to drink.

potare—to drink to excess; to be a drunkard.

*alicui bibere dare*¹—to give some one to drink.

alicui bibere ministrare—to serve some one with drink.

propīno tibi hoc (poculum, salutem)—I drink your health.

bene tibi or *te!*—your health!

inter pocula—whilst drinking; at table.

exaurire poculum—to empty a cup at a draught.

5. SUBSISTENCE IN GENERAL

victus cotidianus—daily bread.

victus tenuis (Fin. 2. 28. 90)—meagre diet.

res ad vitam necessariae
quae ad victum pertinent } the necessities of life.

res ad victum cultumque necessariae—things indispensable to a life of comfort.

vitae commoditas incunditasque—comfort.

omnes ad vitam copias suppeditare alicui—to provide some one with a livelihood.

¹ These forms *dare bibere*, etc., are not Graecisms but old usages which have survived in conversational language. For the infinitive (the dative of the verbal noun) used in this way compare Verg. Aen. i. 527 *non nos aut ferro Libycos populare penates venimus*; Plaut. Bacch. iv. 3. 18 *parasitus modo venerat aurum petere*.

quae suppeditant ad victum (Off. 1. 4. 12)—a livelihood.

copiae cotidianis sumptibus suppetunt (vid. p. 31, note)—his means suffice to defray daily expenses.

victum aliqua re quaerere—to earn a livelihood by something.

vivere carne, piscibus, rapto (Liv. 7. 25)—to live on meat, fish, by plunder.

de suo (opp. *alieno*) *vivere*—to live on one's means.

vitam (inopem) tolerare (B. G. 7. 77)—to endure a life of privation.

non habeo, qui (unde) vivam—I have no means, no livelihood.

*laute vivere*¹ (Nep. Chab. 3. 2)—to live well.

6. EXPENDITURE—LUXURY—PRODIGALITY

sumptum facere, insumere in aliquid—to spend money on an object.

sumptus effusi (vid. p. 146, note) or *profusi*—prodigal expenditure.

sumptui parcere (Fam. 16. 4)—to incur few expenses.

sumptibus modum statuere—to limit one's expenditure.

sumptum minuere—to retrench.

sumptus perpetui (Off. 2. 12. 42)—current expenses.

sumptus liberales (Off. 2. 12. 42)—munificence.

delicate ac molliter vivere—to live a luxurious and effeminate life.

luxuria diffluere (Off. 1. 30. 106) } to be abandoned to a
omnium rerum copia diffluere } life of excess.

in luxuriam effundi—to plunge into excesses, a career of excess.

¹ Not *bene vivere*, which is used of leading a moral life.

effundere, profundere pecuniam, patrimonium—to squander one's money, one's patrimony.

dissipare rem familiarem (suam) } to squander all one's
lacerare bona sua (Verr. 3. 70. 164) } property.

7. HOSPITALITY

convivium instruere, apparare, ornare (*magnifice, splendide*)
 —to prepare, give a feast, dinner.

mensas exquisitissimis epulis instruere (Tusc. 5. 21. 62)—
 to load the tables with the most exquisite viands.

mensae exstructae—a table bountifully spread.

caput cenae (Fin. 2. 8. 25)—the main dish.

secunda mensa (Att. 14. 6. 2)—the dessert.

ab ovo usque ad mala (proverb.)¹—from beginning to end.

aliquem vocare, invitare ad cenam—to invite some one to dinner.

promittere (ad cenam) (Off. 3. 14. 58)—to accept an invitation to dinner.

inter cenam, inter epulas—during dinner; at table.

promittere ad aliquem—to promise to dine with a person.

condicere alicui (ad cenam)—to invite oneself to some one's house for dinner.

adhibere aliquem cenae or *ad cenam, convivio* or *in convivium*
 —to welcome some one to one's table.

cenam alicui apponere—to set a repast before a person.

convivia tempestiva (Arch. 6. 13)—a repast which begins in good time.

accipere aliquem (bene, copiose, laute, eleganter, regio apparatu, apparatis epulis)—to entertain, regale a person.

¹ Lit. "from the egg to the apples," i.e. throughout the dinner; cf. *integram famem ad ovum affero* (Fam. 9. 20. 1).

deverti ad aliquem (*ad* [*in*] *villam*)—to go to a man's house as his guest.

deversari apud aliquem (Att. 6. 1. 25)—to stop with a person, be his guest for a short time when traveling.

mihi cum illo hospitium est, intercedit—my relations with him are most hospitable.

hospitio alicuius uti—to enjoy a person's hospitality.

hospitium cum aliquo facere, (con-)iungere—to become a friend and guest of a person.

hospitio aliquem accipere or *excipere* (*domum ad se*)—to welcome a man as a guest in one's house.

hospitium renuntiare (Liv. 25. 18)—to sever (previous) hospitable relations.

domus patet, aperta est mihi—I am always welcome at his house.

invitare aliquem tecto ac domo or *domum suam* (Liv. 3. 14. 5)—to invite some one to one's house.

8. SOCIABILITY—INTERCOURSE—ISOLATION

*vitae societas*¹—social life.

facilitas, faciles mores (De Am. 3. 11)—a sociable, affable disposition.

societatem inire, facere cum aliquo—to associate with some one.

dissipatos homines in (ad) societatem vitae convocare (Tusc. 1. 25. 62)—to unite isolated individuals into a society.

¹ The adj. *socialis* in the sense of "sociable" only occurs in late Latin, e.g. *homo sociale animal* (Sen.)

socium se adiungere alicui—to attach oneself to a person's society.

aliquem socium admittere—to admit a person into one's society.

assiduum esse cum aliquo—to be always in some one's company.

uti aliquo (familiariter) } to be on intimate terms with
alicuius familiaritate uti } some one.

usu, familiaritate, consuetudine }
coniunctum esse cum aliquo } to be on friendly terms
est mihi consuetudo, or usus } with a person.
cum aliquo }

vivere cum aliquo
vetus usus inter nos intercedit—we have known each other well for several years.

devincire aliquem consuetudine—to attach a person to oneself.

se dare in consuetudinem alicuius—to devote oneself to a person's society.

se insinuare in consuetudinem alicuius (Fam. 4. 13. 6)—to insinuate oneself into a person's society.

summa necessitudine aliquem contingere—to stand in very intimate relations to some one.

in similitate cum aliquo sum—relations are strained between us.

hominum coetus, congressus fugere—to shun society.

in solitudine vivere (Fin. 3. 20. 65)—to live in solitude.

secum vivere—to live to oneself.

vitam solitariam agere—to live a lonely life.

9. CONVERSATION—AUDIENCE— CONFERENCE

sermonem conferre,¹ *instituire, ordiri* } to enter into conver-
cum aliquo } sation with some
se dare in sermonem cum aliquo } one.

sermonem inferre de aliqua re—to turn the conversation on to a certain subject.

*in eum sermonem*² *incidere, qui tum fere multis erat in ore*—to talk of a subject which was then the common topic of conversation.

sermo incidit de aliqua re—the conversation turned on . . .

in sermonem ingredi—to begin a conversation.

sermo ortus est ab aliqua re—the conversation began with . . .

sermonem alio transferre—to turn the conversation to another topic.

medium sermonem abrumperre (Verg. Aen. 4. 388)—to break off in the middle of the conversation.

sermonem producere in multam noctem (Rep. 6. 10. 10)—to prolong a conversation far into the night.

sermonem habere cum aliquo de aliqua re (De Am. 1. 3)—to converse, talk with a person on a subject.

hinc sermo ductus est } the conversation began in
sermo inductus a tali exordio } this way.

multus sermo—a long conversation.

narratio, fabula—a narrative, tale, story.

narratiuncula, fabella (Fin. 5. 15)—an anecdote.

haec fabula docet—this fable teaches us (without *nos*).

¹ *sermonem conserere* only in late Latin.

² Distinguish from such phrases as *incidere in sermonem* (*hominum*), to become common talk.

convenire aliquem—to meet a person (accidentally or intentionally) and talk with him.

congredi cum aliquo—to meet a person by arrangement, interview him.

sui potestatem facere, praebere
alicui } to give audience to some
colloquendi copiam facere, dare } one.
*conveniendi aditum*¹ *dare alicui* }

aditum conveniendi or *colloquium*² *petere*—to ask a hearing, audience, interview.

(*ad colloquium*) *admitti* (B. C. 3. 57) } to obtain an audience
in congressum alicuius venire } of some one.

velle aliquem (Plaut. Capt. 5. 2. 24)—to wish to speak to some one.

paucis te volo
tribus verbis te volo } a word with you.

sermo cotidianus, or simply *sermo*—conversational language.

coram loqui (*cum aliquo*)—to speak personally to . . .

commercium loquendi et audiendi—interchange of ideas ; conversation.

capita conferre (Liv. 2. 45)—to put our heads together.

remotis arbitris or *secreto*—in private ; tête-à-tête.

intra parietes (Brut. 8. 32)—within four walls.

¹ *audientia* is not used in this connection, but only in such phrases as *audientiam facere alicui* or *orationi alicuius*, to listen to a person.

² *colloquium* as opposed to *sermo* means an interview specially arranged, usually for transaction of some business.

10. GREETING—FAREWELL

salutem alicui dicere, impertire,
nuntiare } to greet a person.
aliquem salvere iubere (Att. 4. 14)

*quid agis?*¹—how are you?

quid agitur? quid fit?—what is going on? how are you getting on?

*Cicero Attico*² *S.D.P.* (*salutem dicit plurimam*)—Cicero sends cordial greeting to Atticus.

tibi plurimam salutem—my best wishes for your welfare.

nuntia fratri tuo salutem verbis meis (Fam. 7. 14)—remember me to your brother.

adscribere alicui salutem (Att. 5. 20. 9)—to add to one's letter good wishes to some one.

salute data (accepta) redditaeque—after mutual greeting.

inter se consalutare (De Or. 2. 3. 13)—to exchange greetings.

dextram alicui porrigere, dare—to give one's right hand to some one.

dextram iungere cum aliquo, dextras inter se iungere—to shake hands with a person.

*te valere*³ *iubeo*—I bid you good-bye, take my leave.

vale or *cura ut valeas*—good-bye; farewell.

bene ambula et redambula—a safe journey to you.

gratulari alicui aliquid or *de aliqua re*—to congratulate a person on something.

¹ *quid agis?* is also used as an expression of surprise, “what are you thinking of?”

² This and the following phrase only epistolary.

³ *valedicere alicui* is poetical.

II. BETROTHAL—MARRIAGE—DIVORCE

filiam alicui despondere—to betroth one's daughter to some one.

sibi (aliquam) despondere (of the man)—to betroth oneself, get engaged.

nuptias conciliare (Nep. Att. 5. 3)—to arrange a marriage.

nuptias parare—to make preparations for a marriage.

condicio (uxoria) (Phil. 2. 38. 99)—a match.

ducere uxorem

ducere aliquam in matrimonium } to marry (of the man).

nubere alicui—to marry (of the woman).

nuptam esse cum aliquo or *alicui*—to be married to some one.

uxorem habere (Verr. 3. 33. 76)—to be a married man.

dotem filiae dare—to give a dowry to one's daughter.

filiam alicui in matrimonio or
in matrimonium collocare or
 simply *filiam alicui collocare* } to give one's daughter
filiam alicui in matrimonium dare } in marriage to some-
 one.

filiam alicui nuptum dare

nuntium remittere alicui (De Or.
 I. 40) } to separate, be divorced
repudium dicere or *scribere alicui* } (used of man or
 woman).

divortium facere cum uxore
*aliquam suas res sibi habere*¹ } to separate from, divorce
iubere (Phil. 2. 28. 69) } (of the man).

¹ The formula of divorce used by the man was *tuas res tibi habeto*, cf. Plaut. Trin. 266.

*repudium*¹ *remittere viro* (Dig. 24. 3)—to separate (of the woman).

12. WILL—INHERITANCE

testamentum facere, conscribere—to make a will.

testamentum obsignare (B. G. 1. 39)—to sign a will.

testamentum resignare—to open a will.

testamentum rescindere—to declare a will to be null and void.

testamentum subicere, supponere—to produce a false will.

testamentum irritum facere, rumpere—to annul, revoke a will.

testamento aliquid cavere (Fin. 2. 31)—to prescribe in one's will.

pecuniam alicui legare—to leave money to a person in one's will.

aliquem heredem testamento scribere, facere—to appoint some one as heir in one's will.

alicuius mortui voluntas (suprema)—the last wishes of a deceased person.

heredem esse alicui—to be some one's heir.

hereditate aliquid accipere—to inherit something.

exheres paternorum bonorum (De Or. 1. 38. 175)—disinherited.

exheredari a patre—to be disinherited.

hereditate aliquid relictum est ab aliquo—something has been left as a legacy by some one.

¹ Cicero uses *divortium* not *repudium*. *divortium* (*dis, vertere*) is a separation by mutual consent, *divortium est, quod in diversas partes eunt, qui discedunt* (Paul. Dig. L. 16. 1. 161). In *repudium* one party takes the initiative, usually the husband. The formula commonly used was *tua condicione non utar*.

hereditas ad me or *mihi venit ab aliquo* (Verr. 2. 1. 10)—I have received a legacy from a person.

hereditatem adire, cernere—to take possession of an inheritance.

heres ex asse, ex dodrante—sole heir; heir to three-quarters of the estate.

heres ex besse—heir to two-thirds of the property.

13. CUSTOM—USAGE

*assuefactus*¹ or *assuetus aliqua re*—accustomed to a thing.
in consuetudinem or *morem venire*—to become customary, the fashion.

in nostros mores inducere aliquid (De Or. 2. 28)—to introduce a thing into our customs; to familiarise us with a thing.

consuetudinem suam tenere, retinere, servare—to keep up a usage.

consuetudo inveterascit (B. G. 5. 41. 5)—a custom is taking root, growing up.

res obsolescit—a thing is going out of use, becoming obsolete.

a vetere consuetudine discedere } to give up old customs.

a pristina consuetudine deflectere }

in pristinam consuetudinem revocare aliquid—to return to ancient usage.

aliquid est meae consuetudinis } it is my custom.

aliquid cadit in meam consuetudinem }

mos (moris) est, ut (Brut. 21. 84)—it is customary to . . .

more, usu receptum est—it is traditional usage.

¹ Note *assuescere*, to accustom oneself to . . . , and *assuefacere aliquem*, to accustom some one else to . . .

ut fit, ita ut fit, ut fere fit } as usually happens.
ut solet, ut fieri solet

ita fert consuetudo—so custom, fashion prescribes.

ex consuetudine mea (opp. *praeter consuetudinem*)—according to my custom.

more institutoque maiorum (Mur. 1. 1)—according to the custom and tradition of my fathers.

ex instituto (Liv. 6. 10. 6)—according to traditional usage.

XIII. COMMERCE AND AGRICULTURE

1. COMMERCE IN GENERAL—PURCHASE—PRICE

*negotiatores*¹ (Verr. 2. 69.)
 168) } business-men.
homines negotii (always in
 sing.) *gerentes*

negotii bene gerentes (Quint. 19. 62)—good men of business.

negotium obire or *exsequi*—to be engaged upon a transaction, carry it out.

negotium (rem) conficere, absolvere—to settle, finish a transaction.

mercaturam facere—to be engaged in commerce, wholesale business.

¹ The usual terms for men of business are *negotiator*, *mercator*, *caupo*, *institor*. The first two are used of merchants, wholesale dealers, *negotiator* especially when talking of the transactions (*negotia*) of business, *mercator* with reference to the profits (*merces*). *caupo* is a retail dealer, tradesman, shopkeeper; *institor*, a pedlar, commercial traveller.

negotia habere (in Sicilia)—to have commercial interests in Sicily.

contrahere rem or *negotium cum aliquo* (Cluent. 14. 41)—to have business relations with some one.

transigere aliquid (de aliqua re) cum aliquo or *inter se*—to transact, settle a matter with some one.

nihil cum aliquo contrahere—to do no business with a man.

quaestum facere (Fam. 15. 14)—to make money.

quaestui aliquid habere (Off. 2. 3. 13)—to make a profit out of something.

res, quae importantur et exportantur—imports and exports.

exponere, proponere merces (venales)—to set out goods for sale.

parvo, vili pretio or *bene emere*—to buy cheaply.

magno or *male emere*—to buy dearly.

aliquid magno, parvo stat, constat—a thing costs much, little.

aliquid nihilo or *gratis constat*—a thing costs nothing.

pretium alicui rei statuere, constituere (Att. 13. 22)—to fix a price for a thing.

2. MONEY—INTEREST—LOANS

pecunia magna,¹ *grandis* (*multum pecuniae*)—much money.

pecunia exigua or *tenuis*—little money.

pecunia praesens (*vid. p. 54, note*) or *numerata*—cash ; ready money.

aes (*argentum*) *signatum*—coined money ; bullion.

argentum (*factum*) (Verr. 5. 25. 63)—silver plate.

nummi adulterini—bad money ; base coin.

pecuniam erogare (in classem)—to spend money.

¹ In plur. *magnae, multae pecuniae* = large sums of money.

pecuniam insumere in aliquid or *consumere in aliqua re*—
to devote money to a purpose.

pecuniam numerare alicui (Att. 16. 16)—to pay cash.

pecuniam solvere—to pay money.

pecuniam alicui debere—to owe some one money.

pecuniam alicui credere (*sine fenore, usuris*)—to lend some
one money (without interest).

pecuniam fenori (*fenore*) *alicui dare, accipere ab aliquo*—to
lend, borrow money at interest.

pecuniam fenore occupare (Flacc. 21. 54)—to put out
money at interest.

*pecuniam collocare*¹ *in aliqua re*—to put money in an
undertaking.

pecunia iacet otiosa—the money is bringing in no interest,
lies idle.

pecuniam mutuari or *sumere mutuam ab aliquo*—to borrow
money from some one.

pecuniam alicui mutuam dare—to lend money to some one.

pecuniam creditam solvere—to repay a loan.

*non solvendo*² *esse* (Phil. 2. 2. 4)—to be bankrupt.

pecuniam exigere (*acerbe*)—to demand payment.

magnas pecunias ex aliqua re (e.g. *ex metallis*) *facere*—
to have a large income from a thing (e.g. from
mines).

nummus iactatur (Off. 3. 20. 80)—the bank-rate varies.

versuram facere (Att. 5. 21. 12)—to transfer a debt.

nummulis acceptis (Att. 1. 16. 6)—for a trifle, a beggarly
pittance.

¹ Sometimes absolutely, e.g. Cic. Off. 2. 25. 90 *pecuniam collocare*.

² *solvendo* is a predicative dative. For the development of such uses
cf. *nulli rei erimus postea* (Plaut. Stich. 718); Ovid Met. 15. 403
dedit huic aetas vires onerique ferendo est; Liv. 4. 35 *experiunda res*
est sitne aliqui plebeius ferendo magno honori.

3. MONEY-MATTERS—ACCOUNTS—AUDIT

res nummaria or *pecuniaria* } finance ; money-matters.
ratio pecuniarum }

argentariam facere (Verr. 5. 59. 155)—to be a banker.

argentariam dissolvere (Caecin. 4. 11)—to close one's bank, give up banking.

codex or *tabulae ratio excepti et expensi*—account-book ; ledger.

nomina facere or *in tabulas referre*—to book a debt.

pecunia in nominibus ¹ *est*—money is outstanding, unpaid.

pecuniam in nominibus habeo—I have money owing me.

alicui expensum ferre aliquid—to put a thing down to a man's account.

alicui acceptum referre aliquid ² (Verr. 2. 70. 170)—to put down to a man's credit.

rationem alicuius rei inire, sub-
ducere } to go through accounts,
ad calculos vocare aliquid } make a valuation of a
 (Amic. 16. 58) } thing.

inita subductaque ratione aliquid facere—to do something after careful calculation.

rationes putare ³ *cum aliquo*—to balance accounts with some one.

¹ *nomina* are properly the sums entered in the ledger as due from a person. Hence *nomen solvere*, *dissolvere*, to pay a debt ; *nomen expedire*, *exsolvere*, to get rid of a debt ; *bonum nomen*, a safe investment (Cic. Fam. 5. 6. 2).

² Also used metaphorically to "owe a thing to another's instrumentality," e.g. *quod vivo tibi acceptum refero*.

³ The original meaning of *putare* is to prune (cf. *purus*, *amputare*), cleanse by cutting off, then make clear, calculate, reckon. By a transference it became used of the result of calculation, i.e. thinking, believing. Compare the history of the French *raisonner* and the Italian *ragioneria*.

ratio alicuius rei constat (convenit, par est)—the accounts balance.

ratio acceptorum et datorum (accepti et expensi) (Amic. 16. 58)—the account of receipts and expenditure.

rationem diligenter conficere—to keep the accounts (day-book) carefully.

summam facere alicuius rei—to compute the total of anything.

de capite deducere (vid. p. 186, note) *aliquid*—to subtract something from the capital.

rationem alicuius rei reddere—to render count of a matter ; to pass it for audit.

<i>rationem alicuius rei reposcere</i>	} to demand an account, an audit of a matter.
<i>aliquem</i> or <i>ab aliquo</i>	
<i>rationem ab aliquo repetere de</i>	
<i>aliqua re</i> (Cluent. 37. 104)	

4. RATE OF INTEREST

centesimae (sc. *usurae*) (Att. 5. 21. 11)—interest at 1 per cent per month, 12 per cent per annum.

binis centesimis fenerari—to lend at 24 per cent.

ternae centesimae—36 per cent per annum.

quaternas centesimas postulare (Att. 5. 21. 11)—to demand 48 per cent.

semisses—6 per cent (i.e. if for 100 denarii, asses, one pays half a denarius, half an as per month).

semissibus magna copia est—money is plentiful at 6 per cent.

<i>usurae semissium</i> (Colum.)	} 6 per cent.
<i>usurae semisses</i> (Jurists)	

quadrantes usurae—3 per cent (a quarter of centesima).

trientes or *trientariae usurae* (Att. 4. 15)—4 per cent.

quincunx (Pers. 5. 149) }
quincunces usurae } 5 per cent.

fenus ex triente Id. Quint. *factum erat bessibus* (Att. 4. 15. 7)
 —the rate of interest has gone up from 4 per cent
 to 8 per cent.

perpetuum fenus (Att. 5. 21. 13)—simple interest.

fenus renovatum
anatocismus (ἀνατοκισμός) } compound interest.
 (Att. 5. 21. 11)

fenus iniquissimum, grande, grave—exorbitant rate of
 interest.

usura menstrua—monthly interest.

centesimis cum anatocismo contentum esse (Att. 5. 21. 12)—to
 be content with 12 per cent at compound interest.

5. PROFIT—CREDIT—DEBT

lucrum facere (opp. *damnum facere*) *ex aliqua re*—to make
 profit out of a thing.

in lucro ponere aliquid (Flacc. 17. 40)—to consider a
 thing as profit.

debitor, or *is qui debet*—the debtor.

creditor, or *is cui debeo*—the creditor.

fides et ratio pecuniarum—credit and financial position.

fides (vid. p. 158, note) *concidit*—credit is going down.

fidem derogare alicui—to rob a person of his credit.

fides aliquem deficere coepit—a man's credit begins to go
 down.

fides (de foro) sublata est (Leg. Agr. 2. 3. 8)—credit has
 disappeared.

fides tota Italia est angusta—credit is low throughout Italy.

fidem moliri (Liv. 6. 11. 8)—to shake credit.

laborare de pecunia—to have pecuniary difficulties.

in summa difficultate nummaria versari (Verr. 2. 28. 69)—to be in severe pecuniary straits.

in maximas angustias (pecuniae) adduci—to be reduced to extreme financial embarrassment.

aes alienum (always in sing.) *facere, contrahere*—to incur debts.

grande, magnum (opp. *exiguum*) *aes alienum conflare*—to incur debts on a large scale.

incidere in aes alienum—to get into debt.

aes alienum habere
in aere alieno esse } to be in debt.

in suis nummis versari (Verr. 4. 6. 11)—to have no debts.

aere alieno obrutum, demersum esse—to be deeply in debt.

aere alieno oppressum esse—to have pressing debts.

aes alienum dissolvere, exsolvere
nomina (cf. p. 204), *solvere, dis-*
solvere, exsolvere } to pay one's debts.

nomina exigere (Verr. 3. 10. 28)—to demand payment of, recover debts.

ex aere alieno exire
aere alieno liberari } to get out of debt.

versurâ solvere, dissolvēre (Att. 5. 15. 2)—to pay one's old debts by making new.

6. BUILDING

opus locare—to contract for the building of something.

opus redimere, conducere—to undertake the contract for a work.

domum aedificandam locare, conducere—to give, undertake a contract for building a house.

aedificatorem esse (Nep. Att. 13. 1)—to be fond of building.

exstruere aedificium, monumentum—to erect a building, a monument.

fundamenta iacere, agere—to lay the foundations.

turrim excitare, erigere, facere—to build a tower.

oppidum constituere, condere—to build, found a city.

<i>pontem facere in flumine</i>	} to build a bridge over a river.
<i>inicere pontem</i>	
<i>flumen ponte iungere</i>	

pons est in flumine—there is a bridge over the river.

pontem dissolvere, rescindere, interscindere (B. G. 2. 9. 4)—to break down a bridge.

*luminibus alicuius obstruere, officere*¹—to obstruct a person's view, shut out his light by building.

7. AGRICULTURE—MANAGEMENT OF STOCK

agrum colere (Leg. Agr. 2. 25. 67)—to till the ground.

agros fertiles deserere—to leave fertile ground untilled.

agriculturae studere (opp. *agriculturam deserere*)—to have a taste for agriculture.

¹ Also used metaphorically to overshadow, eclipse a person, cf. vi. 1.

opus rusticum—tillage ; cultivation.

in agris esse, habitare—to live in the country.

serere ; semen spargere—to sow.

sementem facere (B. G. 1. 3. 1)—to look after the sowing.

ut sementem feceris, ita metes (proverb.) (De Or. 2. 65)—as you sow, so will you reap.

laetae segetes—the laughing cornfields.

laetissimi flores (Verr. 4. 48. 107)—a glorious expanse of flowers.

odores, qui efflantur e floribus—the perfume exhaled by flowers.

messis in herbis est (Liv. 25. 15)—the crop is in the blade.

adhuc tua messis in herba est (proverb.)—your crop is still green, *i.e.* you are still far from your ambition.

frumenta in agris matura non sunt (B. G. 1. 16. 2)—the corn is not yet ripe.

messem facere
fructus demetere or percipere } to reap.

fructus condere (N. D. 2. 62. 156)—to harvest crops.

messis opima (opp. *ingrata*)—a good harvest.

arbores serere (De Sen. 7. 24)—to plant trees.

arbores caedere—to fell trees.

inopia (opp. *copia*) *rei frumentariae*
difficultas annonae (Imp. Pomp. 15. 44) } want of corn ; scarcity
in the corn-market.

annona ingravescit, crescit—the price of corn is going up.

annona laxatur, levatur, vilior fit—the price of corn is going down.

caritas annonae (opp. *vilitas*), also simply *annona*—dearth of corn ; high prices.

*ad denarios*¹ *L in singulos modios annona pervenerat*—corn
had gone up to 50 denarii the bushel.

annona cara est—corn is dear.

hac annona (Plaut. Trin. 2. 4. 83)—when corn is as dear
as it is.

rem pecuariam facere, exercere (cf. Varro R. R. 2. 1)—to
rear stock.

pastum agere—to drive to pasture.

pastum ire—to go to pasture.

pascere gregem—to feed a flock (of goats).

*greges pascuntur*² (Verg. G. 3. 162)—the herds are grazing.

alere equos, canes—to keep horses, dogs.

animalia quae nobiscum degunt (Plin. 8. 40)—domestic
animals.

XIV. THE STATE

I. CONSTITUTION—ADMINISTRATION— GOVERNMENT

forma rei publicae
descriptio civitatis
instituta et leges } the constitution.

*rem publicam constituere*³
rem publicam legibus et insti-
tutis temperare (Tusc. I. I. 2)
civitati leges, iudicia, iura de-
scribere } to give the state a con-
stitution.

¹ *denarius* = about 9½d., *vid.* Gow, Companion to School Classics,
p. 149.

² *pascere* and *pasci* are also used metaphorically, *vid.* iii. s. v. *oculi*.

³ Cf. *tres viri rei publicae constituendae*.

suis legibus utitur (B. G. 1. 45. 3)—(a state) has its own laws, is autonomous.

nullam habere rem publicam—to have no constitution, be in anarchy.

rem publicam in pristinum statum restituere—to restore the ancient constitution.

optima re publica—at the time of a most satisfactory government.

libera res publica, liber populus—the Republic.

rem publicam gerere, administrare, regere, tractare, gubernare—to govern, administer the state.

rei publicae praeesse—to have the management of the state.

<i>ad gubernacula</i> (metaph. only in plur.)	} to hold the reins of government.
<i>rei publicae sedere</i>	
<i>clavum rei publicae tenere</i>	
<i>gubernacula rei publicae tractare</i>	

principem civitatis esse—to be the chief man in the state.

principem in re publica locum obtinere—to hold the first position in the state.

negotia publica (Off. 1. 20. 69)—public affairs.

vita occupata (vid. p. 94)—the busy life of a statesman.

<i>accedere, se conferre ad rem publicam</i>	} to devote oneself to politics, a political career.
<i>rem publicam capessere</i> (Off. 1. 21. 71)	

in re publica or *in rebus publicis versari*—to take part in politics.

rei publicae deesse (opp. *adesse*)—to take no part in politics.

<i>a negotiis publicis se removere</i>	} to retire from public life.
<i>a re publica recedere</i>	

in otium se referre (Fam. 99)—to retire into private life.

vita privata (Senect. 7. 22)—private life.

publico carere, forum ac lucem fugere }
forensi luce carere } to shun publicity.

rem publicam tueri, stabilire—to defend, strengthen the state.

res publica stat (opp. *iacet*)—the state is secure.

rem publicam augere, amplificare—to aggrandise, extend the power of the state.

saluti rei publicae non deesse—to further the common weal.

*rei publicae*¹ *causa* (Sest. 47. 101)—for political reasons.

e re publica (opp. *contra rem p.*)—for the advantage of the state; in the interests of the state.

summa res publica (or *summa rei publicae*)—the welfare of the state.

commoda publica or *rei publicae rationes*—the interests of the state.

rei publicae rationibus or simply *rei publicae consulere*—to further the public interests.

ad rei publicae rationes aliquid referre—to consider a thing from a political point of view.

in rem publicam omni cogitatione
curaque incumbere (Fam. 10. 1. 2)
omnes curas et cogitationes in rem
publicam conferre
omnes curas in rei publicae salute
defigere (Phil. 14. 5. 13)

} to devote one's every thought to the state's welfare.

¹ There being no adjective in Latin for "political," we have to make use of periphrasis with such words as *res publica*, *civilis*, *popularis*, etc.

totum et animo et corpore in salutem rei publicae se conferre
—to devote oneself body and soul to the good of the state.

bene, optime sentire de re publica
omnia de re publica praeclara
atque egregia sentire } to have the good of the state at heart.

rector civitatis (De Or. I. 48. 211)—the head of the state.

viri rerum civilium, rei publicae
gerendae periti or *viri in re*
publica prudentes
auctores consilii publici
principes rem publicam admini-
strantes or simply *principes* } statesmen.

prudentia (civilis) (De Or. I. 19. 85)—statesmanship ; political wisdom.

homo in re publica exercitatus—an experienced politician.

res civiles—political questions.

plus in re publica videre—to possess great political insight.

longe prospicere futuros casus rei publicae (De Amic. 12. 40)
—to foresee political events long before.

alicuius in re publica or capessendae rei publicae consilia eo spectant, ut . . .—a man's policy is aiming at, directed towards . . .

rei publicae muneribus orbatus
gerendis negotiis orbatus (Fin. 5. 20. 57) } banished from public life.

2. CIVIL RIGHTS—RANK

civitate donare aliquem (Balb. 3. 7)—to make a man a citizen.

in civitatem recipere, ascribere, asciscere aliquem—to enroll as a citizen, burgess.

civitatem alicui dare, tribuere, impertire—to present a person with the freedom of the city.

civitatem mutare (Balb. 11. 27)—to naturalise oneself as a citizen of another country.

generis antiquitate florere—to be of noble family.

nobilitati favere (Sest. 9. 21) } to be a friend of the
nobilitatis fautorem, studiosum esse } aristocracy.

*homo novus*¹—a parvenu (a man no member of whose family has held curule office).

ordo senatorius (amplissimus)—the senatorial order.

ordo equester (splendidissimus)—the equestrian order; the knights.

summo loco natus—of high rank.

nobili, honesto, illustri loco or *genere natus*—of illustrious family.

humili, obscuro loco natus
humilibus (obscuris) parentibus
natus } of humble, obscure origin.

infimo loco natus—from the lowest classes.

equestri loco natus or *ortus*—a knight by birth.

summi (et) infimi (Rep. 1. 34. 53)—high and low.

homines omnis generis—people of every rank.

homines omnium ordinum et aetatum—people of every rank and age.

homo plebeius, de plebe—one of the people.

traduci ad plebem (Att. 1. 18. 4)—to get oneself admitted as a plebeian.

¹ A *novus homo* by taking office becomes for his descendants *princeps nobilitatis* (Cic. Brut. 14) or *auctor generis* (Leg. Agr. 2. 35).

transitio ad plebem (Brut. 16. 62) } to transfer oneself from
traductio ad plebem } the patrician to the
 } plebeian order.

unus de or *e multis*—one of the crowd ; a mere individual.

faex populi, plebis, civitatis—the dregs of the people.

infima fortuna or *condicio servorum*—a degraded, servile condition.

unus e togatorum numero—an ordinary, average Roman citizen.

3. DIGNITY—POSITION—HONOURS—PRE- EMINENCE—(cf. p. 64)

dignitatem suam tueri, defendere, retinere, obtinere—to guard, maintain one's dignity.

dignitati suae servire, consulere—to be careful of one's dignity.

aliquem ad summam dignitatem perducere (B. G. 7. 39)—to elevate to the highest dignity

principem (primum), secundum locum dignitatis obtinere—to occupy the first, second position in the state.

in altissimo dignitatis gradu collocatum, locatum, positum esse—to occupy a very high position in the state.

aliquem ex altissimo dignitatis gradu praecipitare (Dom. 37. 98)—to depose, bring down a person from his elevated position.

aliquem de dignitatis gradu de-
movere } to overthrow a person
aliquem gradu movere, depellere } (cf. p. 152).
 or *de gradu (statu) deicere* }

dignitatis gradum ascendere—to attain a position of dignity.

ad honores ascendere—to rise, mount to the honours of office.

amplissimos honorum gradus assequi, adipisci—to reach the highest grade of office.

ad summos honores pervenire (cf. also p. 64)—to attain to the highest offices.

vir defunctus honoribus—a man who has held every office (up to the consulship).

principatum tenere, obtinere—to occupy the leading position.

de principatu deiectus (B. G. 7. 63)—deposed from one's high position.

principatum alicui or *ad aliquem deferre*—to assign the first place to some one.

contendere cum aliquo de principatu (Nep. Arist. 1)—to contend with some one for the pre-eminence.

primas (e.g. *sapientiae*) *alicui deferre, tribuere, concedere*—to give the palm, the first place (for wisdom) to some one.

4. PUBLIC MEETINGS—SUFFRAGE

convocare populi concilium and *populum ad concilium* } to summon an assembly of the people.
contionem advocare (Sall. Jug. 33. 3) }
*agere cum populo*¹ (Leg. 3. 4. 10)—to submit a formal proposition to the people.

¹ Aulus Gellius (13. 16. 3) explains the difference between *cum populo agere* and *contionem habere*; the former = *rogare quid populum quod suffragiis suis aut iubeat aut vetet*. Cf. Liv. 22. 10. 2 *velitis iubeatisne haec sic fieri?* also 21. 17. 4. *habere contionem* (*contio* = *countio* = *contio*) is equivalent to *verba facere ad populum sine ulla rogatione*.

concilium indicere, habere, dimittere—to fix the day for, to hold, to dismiss a meeting.

comitia habere—to hold a meeting of the people.

comitia magistratibus creandis—meetings for the election of officers.

comitiis (Abl.) *convenire*—to meet for elections.

comitiis consulem creari—to be chosen consul at the elections.

suffragium ferre (*vid.* p. 79, note, *sententiam dicere*)—to vote (in the popular assembly).

multitudinis suffragiis rem permittere—to leave a matter to be decided by popular vote.

5. LAWS—BILLS

*legem, rogationem*¹ *promulgare* (Liv. 33. 46)—to bring a bill before the notice of the people.

legem ferre or simply *ferre ad populum, ut . . .*—to propose a law in the popular assembly.

legem suadere (opp. *dissuadere*) } to support a bill (before
pro lege dicere } the people).

legem rogare or *rogare populum* (cf. p. 216, note)—to formally propose a law to the people.

legem perferre (Liv. 33. 46)—to carry a law (said of the magistrate).

lex perfertur—a law is adopted.

*legem antiquare*² (opp. *accipere, iubere*)—to reject a bill.

¹ A *rogatio* had to be posted up in some public place for *trinum nundinum* (*tempus*) (Phil. 5. 3. 8), i.e. for seventeen days, *nundinae* (*novem, dies*) being a holiday, fair, held every ninth day.

² On the voting-tablets (*tabellae*) used in the *comitia* was written either A (*antiquo*) to reject the bill, V · R (*uti rogas*) to pass it; in judicial questions A (*absolvo*), C (*condemno*), N · L (*non liquet*).

legem sciscere (Planc. 14. 35)—to vote for a law.

legem iubere—to ratify a law (used of the people).

legem sancire—to let a bill become law (of people and senate).

Solo lege sanxit, ut or ne—Solon ordained by law that . . .

Solonis legibus sanctum erat, ut or ne—the laws of Solon ordained that . . .

*legem abrogare*¹ (Att. 3. 23. 2)—to replace an old law by a new.

legem tollere (Leg. 2. 12. 31)—to abolish a law.

legi intercedere—to protest against a law (used of the veto, *intercessio*, of plebeian tribunes).

legem proponere in publicum—to bring a law before the notice of the people.

edictum proponere (Att. 2. 21. 4)—to publish, post up an edict.

legem in aes incidere—to engrave a law upon a brazen tablet.

lex rata est (opp. *irrita*)—a law is valid.

legem ratam esse iubere—to declare a law valid.

a lege discedere—to transgress a law.

salvis legibus (*vid.* p. 172, note)—without breaking the law.

*lex*² *iubet, vetat* (*dilucide, planissime*)—the law orders, forbids (expressly, distinctly).

in lege scriptum est, or simply *est*—the law says . . .

sententia or *voluntas legis*—the spirit of the law.

¹ *legi* or *de lege derogare*=to reject a clause in it; *legem abrogare*, to nullify a law by passing another which contradicts it; *multam, poenam inrogare alicui*, to inflict a fine on some one with the approval of the people; *pecuniam erogare (ex aerario in classem)*, to draw money from the treasury and distribute it according to the wishes of the people.

² *lex* is often personified in this way.

leges scribere, facere, condere, constituere (not *dare*)—to make laws (of a legislator).

legum scriptor, conditor, inventor
qui leges scribit (not *legum* } a legislator.
lator)¹

in legem iurare (Sest. 16. 37)—to swear obedience to a law.

lege teneri—to be bound by a law.

legibus solvere—to free from legal obligations.

ea lege, ut—on condition of . . .

aliquid contra legem est—a thing is illegal.

acta rescindere, dissolvere (Phil. 13. 3. 5)—to declare a magistrate's decisions null and void.

in album referre (De Or. 2. 12. 52)—to record in the official tablets (*Annales maximi*).

6. POPULAR FAVOUR—INFLUENCE— UNPOPULARITY

aura favoris popularis (Liv. 22. 26) } popular favour ; popular-
populi favor, gratia popularis } ity.
aura popularis (Harusp. 18. 43) }
auram popularem captare (Liv. 3. 33) } to court popularity.
gratiam populi quaerere }

aurae popularis homo (Liv. 42. 30)—a popular man.

ventum popularem quendam (*in aliqua re*) *quaerere*—to strive to gain popular favour by certain means.

gratiosum esse (opp. *invisum esse*)—to be popular, influential.

¹ *legis lator* = the man who proposes a law.

opibus, gratia, auctoritate valere, florere—to have great influence.

opes, gratiam, potentiam consequi—to acquire influence.

gratiam inire apud aliquem, ab aliquo (cf. p. 58)—to gain some one's favour.

gratiam, opes alicuius imminuere (opp. *augere*)—to weaken a person's influence.

crescere ex aliquo—to raise oneself by another's fall.

crescere ex invidia senatoria—to profit by the unpopularity of the senate to gain influence oneself.

iacere (vid. p. 92, note)—to be politically annihilated.

existimatio populi, hominum—public opinion.

multum communi hominum opinioni tribuere—to be always considering what people think.

invidia

offensio populi, popularis } unpopularity.
offensa populi voluntas }

invidia dictatoria (Liv. 22. 26)—the feeling against the dictator.

ex invidia alicuius auram popularem petere (Liv. 22. 26)—to use some one's unpopularity as a means of making oneself popular.

7. PARTY-SPIRIT—NEUTRALITY—POLITICS— ARISTOCRACY—DEMOCRACY

partes (usually of plebeians) } a party ; faction.
factio (of aristocrats) }

partium studium, also simply *studia*—party-spirit.

partium studiosum esse—to be a strong partisan.

certamen partium

contentio partium (Phil. 5. 12. 32) } party-strife.

partium studiis divisum esse—to be torn by faction.

consiliorum in re publica socius—a political ally.

alicuius partes (causam) or simply *aliquem sequi*
alicuius partibus studere } to embrace the cause
of . . . , be a parti-
san of . . .

ab (cum) aliquo stare (Brut. 79. 273)—to be on a person's side (not *ab alicuius partibus*).

alicuius studiosum esse—to be a follower of some one.

cum aliquo facere (Sull. 13. 36)—to take some one's side.

nullius or *neutrius* (of two)
partis esse
in neutris partibus esse
neutram partem sequi
medium esse
medium se gerere } to be neutral.

a partibus rei publicae animus liber (Sall. Cat. 4. 2)—an independent spirit.

idem de re publica sentire—to have the same political opinions.

ab aliquo in re publica dissentire—to hold different views in politics.

ex rei publicae dissensione—owing to political dissension.

in duas partes discedere (Sall. Iug. 13. 1)—to divide into two factions.

studio ad rem publicam ferri—to throw oneself heart and soul into politics.

se civilibus fluctibus committere—to enter the whirlpool of political strife.

imperium singulare, unius dominatus, regium imperium—monarchy.

optimatum dominatus
civitas, quae optimatum arbitrio
regitur } aristocracy (as a form of
 government).

boni cives, optimi, optimates, also simply *boni* (opp. *improbi*) ;
illi, qui optimatum causam agunt—the aristocracy
 (as a party in politics).

principes or *primores*—the aristocracy (as a leading class
 in government).

nobiles ; *nobilitas* ; *qui nobilitate generis excellunt*—the
 aristocracy (as a social class).

paucorum dominatio or *potentia*—oligarchy.

multitudinis dominatus or *imperium*—government by the
 mob.

spiritus patricii (Liv. 4. 42)—patrician arrogance ; pride of
 caste.

homines graves (opp. *leves*)—men of sound opinions.

homo popularis—a democrat.

homo vere popularis (Catil. 4. 5. 9)—a man who genuinely
 wishes the people's good.

homo florens in populari ratione—a democratic leader.

imperium populi or *populare*, *civitas* or *res publica popularis*
 —democracy.

causam popularem suscipere or *defendere*—to take up the
 cause of the people, democratic principles.

populi causam agere—to be a leading spirit of the popular
 cause.

patriae amantem (*amantissimum*) *esse* (Att. 9. 22)—to be
 (very) patriotic.

mundanus, mundi civis et incola (Tusc. 5. 37)—a citizen of
 the world ; cosmopolitan.

statum rei publicae convellere—to endanger the existence of the state.

rem publicam vexare—to damage the state.

rem publicam funditus evertere—to completely overthrow the government, the state.

omnes leges confundere—to upset the whole constitution.

omnia turbare ac miscere—to cause universal disorder.

perturbatio omnium rerum (Flacc. 37)—general confusion ; anarchy.

omnia divina humanaque iura permiscentur (B. C. 1. 6. 8)—anarchy reigns supreme.

leges nullae }
iudicia nulla } lawlessness ; anarchy.

res fluit ad interregnum—things seem tending towards an interregnum.

non nullus odor est dictaturae (Att. 4. 18)—there are whispers of the appointment of a dictator.

tumultum sedare (B. C. 3. 18. 3)—to quell an outbreak.

concitatam multitudinem reprimere—to allay the excitement of the mob.

plebem continere—to hold the people in one's power, in check.

9. PROSCRIPTION—CONFISCATION—BANISHMENT—AMNESTY

proscribere aliquem or *alicuius* }
possessiones } to proscribe a person,
aqua et igni interdicere alicui } declare him an outlaw.

in proscriptorum numerum referre aliquem (Rosc. Am. 11. 32)—to place a person's name on the list of the proscribed.

e proscriptorum numero eximere aliquem—to erase a person's name from the list of the proscribed.

bona alicuius publicare (B. G. 5. 54)—to confiscate a person's property.

bona alicui restituere—to restore to a person his confiscated property.

<i>in exsilium eicere or expellere</i>	} to banish a person, send him into exile.
<i>aliquem</i>	
<i>ex urbe (civitate) expellere, pel-</i>	
<i>lere aliquem</i>	

de, e civitate aliquem eicere

exterminare (ex) urbe, de civitate aliquem (Mil. 37. 101)—to expel a person from the city, country.

e patria exire iubere aliquem—to banish a man from his native land.

patria carere—to be in exile.

interdicere alicui Italiâ—to banish a person from Italy.

aliquem exsilio afficere, multare—to punish by banishment.

<i>in exsilium ire, pergere, proficisci</i>	} to go into exile.
<i>exsulatum ire or abire</i>	

solum vertere, mutare (Caecin. 34. 100)—to leave one's country (only used of exiles).

<i>exsulare</i> (Div. 2. 24. 52)	} to live in exile.
<i>in exsilio esse, exsulem esse</i>	

aliquem (in patriam) restituere—to recall from exile.

in patriam redire—to return from exile.

ante actarum (praeteritarum) rerum oblivio or simply *oblivio*—amnesty (ἀμνηστία).

omnem memoriam discordiarum oblivione sempiterna delere (Phil. 1. 1. 1)—to proclaim a general amnesty.

postliminium (De Or. 1. 40. 181)—a returning from exile to one's former privileges.

10. POWER—MONARCHY—ROYALTY

*imperium, rerum summam deferre alicui*¹—to confer supreme power on a person.

rem publicam alicui permittere—to give some one unlimited power in state affairs.

imperium tenere (in aliquem)—to have power over some one.

imperium obtinere—to maintain power, authority.

principatu deici (B. G. 7. 63)—to be deposed from one's leading position.

cum imperio esse (cf. p. 249)—to have unlimited power ; to be invested with *imperium*.

in imperio esse—to hold a high office (such as conferred *imperium*, i.e. *consulatus*, *dictatura*, *praetura*).

imperium in annum prorogare—to prolong the command for a year.

imperium deponere (Rep. 2. 12. 23)—to lay down one's power.

*imperium singulare*²—absolute power ; autocracy.

dominari in aliquem—to have unlimited power over a person.

*imperium, regnum, tyrannidem*³ *occupare*—to take upon oneself absolute power.

¹ *deferre* in the sense "confer," "attribute," is also constructed with *ad* ; when it means to bring news, give information, it always takes *ad*.

² Cf. *certamen singulare*, a fight of one individual with another, a duel (cf. xvi. 10a). *singularis* also has the meaning "unique," "pre-eminent," e.g. *singularis virtus*.

³ *tyrannus, tyrannis, tyrannicus* are rarely used in the Greek sense, irresponsible sovereign, etc., but usually mean despot, despotic, etc. The pure Latin equivalents are *rex, dominus, dominatio, imperium, regius*, or if there is emphasis on the cruelty of despots, *dominus saevus, crudelis et superba dominatio*, etc.

rerum potiri—(1) to usurp supreme power, (2) to be in a position of power.

dominatio impotens
potestas immoderata, infinita } despotic, tyrannous rule.

tyrannidem concupiscere—to aspire to a despotism.

tyrannidem sibi parere aliqua re—to establish oneself as despot, tyrant by some means.

regnum appetere (B. G. 7. 4)—to aspire to the sovereignty.

regnum adipisci—to obtain the sovereignty, kingly office.

alicui regnum deferre, tradere—to invest some one with royal power.

aliquem regem, tyrannum constituere—to establish some one as king, tyrant.

regem restituere
aliquem in regnum restituere } to restore a king to his throne (not *in solium*).

aliquem regno spoliare or *expellere* (Div. 1. 22. 74)—to depose a king.

regios spiritus sibi sumere—to assume a despotic tone.

II. SLAVERY—FREEDOM

servitute premi (Phil. 4. 1. 3)—to languish in slavery.

liberum populum servitute afficere—to enslave a free people.

aliquem in servitutem redigere—to reduce to slavery.

alicui servitutem iniungere, imponere—to lay the yoke of slavery on some one.

civitatem servitute oppressam tenere (Dom. 51. 131)—to keep the citizens in servile subjection.

libertatem populo eripere—to rob a people of its freedom.

populum liberum esse, libertate uti, sui iuris esse pati—to grant a people its independence.

aliquem in servitutem abducere, abstrahere—to carry off into slavery.

aliquem sub corona vendere (B. G. 3. 16)—to sell a prisoner of war as a slave.

iugum servitutis accipere—to submit to the yoke of slavery.

libertas, libertatis studium—independent spirit.

imperium oppugnare, percellere—to attack, overthrow a tyranny.

ad libertatem conclamare—to summon to liberty.

ad arma conclamare (Liv. 3. 50)—to call to arms.

vincula rumpere—to burst one's chains.

iugum servitutis excutere

iugum servile a cervicibus deicere (Phil. 1. 2. 6) } to shake off the yoke of slavery.

servitutem exuere (Liv. 34. 7)

iugum servile alicui demere

ab aliquo servitutem or servitutis iugum depellere } to deliver some one from slavery.

dominationem or dominatum

refringere

regios spiritus reprimere (Nep. Dion 5. 5) } to destroy a despotism, tyranny.

libertatem recuperare—to recover liberty.

rem publicam in libertatem vindicare a or ex dominatione—to deliver the state from a tyranny.

12. REVENUE—COLONIES—PROVINCES

vectigalia redimere, conducere—to farm the revenues.

vectigalia exercere (vid. p. 51, note)—to collect the taxes.

vectigalia exigere (*acerbe*)—to exact the taxes (with severity).

pecuniam cogere a civitatibus—to extort money from the communities.

*vectigalia, tributa*¹ *pendere*—to pay taxes.

immunis (tributorum) (Verr. 5. 21. 51)—exempt from taxation.

immunitatem omnium rerum habere—to enjoy absolute immunity.

vectigalia, tributa alicui imponere—to impose tribute on some one.

tributorum multitudine premi—to be crushed by numerous imposts.

ager publicus—public land ; state domain.

agros assignare (Leg. Agr. 1. 6. 17)—to allot land.

pecunia publica, quae ex metallis redit—the public income from the mines.

avertere pecuniam (Verr. 2. 1. 4) }
peculatum facere (Rab. Perd. 3. 8) } to embezzle money.

rem publicam quaestui habere—to enrich oneself at the expense of the state.

coloniam deducere in aliquem locum (vid. p. 186, note)—to found a colony somewhere.

colonos mittere (Div. 1. 1. 3)—to send out colonists.

coloniam constituere (Leg. Agr. 1. 5. 16)—to found a colony.

*provinciam*² *alicui decernere, mandare*—to entrust some one with an official duty, a province.

¹ *vectigalia*=indirect taxes, including, for example, *decumae*, the tenth, tithe of corn ; *scriptura*, the duty on pasturage ; *portorium*, harbour-toll. *tributum*=direct tax on incomes.

² *provincia* originally means a sphere of activity, an employ, especially of magistrates ; it then means the administration of a country outside Italy conquered in war, and lastly the country itself, a province. The senate each year determined on the countries to which magistrates were to be sent (*provincias nominare, decernere*).

provincias sortiri (Liv. 38. 35)—to draw lots for the provinces.

alicui Syria (sorte) obvēnit, obtigit—the province of Syria has fallen to some one's lot.

provincias inter se comparant—(the magistrates) arrange among themselves the administration of the provinces, the official spheres of duty.

in provinciam proficisci (Liv. 38. 35)—to set out for one's province.

provincias permutare—to exchange provinces.

provinciam administrare, obtinere—to manage, govern a province.

provinciam obire—to visit, traverse a province.

(*de* or *ex*) *provincia decedere* or simply *decedere* (*vid.* p. 14, note)—to leave a province (at the termination of one's term of office).

13. MAGISTRACIES

(a) CANDIDATURE—ELECTION

petere magistratum, honores—to seek office.

*ambire*¹ *aliquem* (always with Acc. of person)—to solicit the vote or favour of some one.

nomen profiteri or simply *profiteri*—to become a candidate.

*manus prensare*² (De Or. 1. 24. 112)—to shake hands with voters in canvassing.

¹ Hence *ambitio*, legitimate canvassing; *ambitus*, illegal canvassing.

² Under the head of *ambitionis occupatio* (De Or. 1. 1. 1) are enumerated *salutare, rogare, supplicare, manus prensare, invitare ad prandium*, and sometimes *convivia tributim data*. For the whole subject *vid.* Q. Cicero's book *de petitione consulatus ad M. fratrem*.

nomina appellat (*nomenclator*)—the agent (*nomenclator*) mentions the names of constituents to the canvasser.

competitor (Brut. 30. 113)—a rival candidate.

*multa (pauca) puncta in centuria (tribu) aliqua ferre*¹—to obtain many (few) votes in a century or tribe.

centuriam, tribum ferre (Planc. 49)—to gain the vote of a century or tribe.

omnes centurias ferre or *omnium suffragiis, cunctis centuriis creari*—to be elected unanimously.

repulsam ferre consulatus (a populo) (Tusc. 5. 19. 54)—to fail in one's candidature for the consulship.

magistratus vitio creati—magistrates elected irregularly (*i.e.* either when the auspices have been unfavourable or when some formality has been neglected).

sufficere aliquem in alicuius locum or *alicui*—to elect a man to fill the place of another who has died whilst in office.

alicui or *in alicuius locum succedere*—to succeed a person in an office.

alicui imperatori succedere—to succeed some one as general.

suo (legitimo) anno creari (opp. *ante annum*)—to be elected at the age required by law (*lex Villia annalis*).

continuatione magistratum (Sall. Jug. 37. 2)—to continue one's office for another year.

continuatione alicui magistratum—to prolong some one's office for another year.

¹ In counting the votes polled, a dot or mark was put opposite a candidate's name as often as a tablet (*tabella*) with his name on it came up. Hence *punctum ferre*, to be successful, e.g. Hor. A. P. 343 *omne tulit punctum qui miscuit utile dulci*.

prorogare alicui imperium (in annum)—to prolong a person's command.

magistratus et imperia (Sall. Iug. 3. 1)—civil and military offices.

inire magistratum—to enter into office.

munus administrare, gerere
munere fungi, muneri praeesse } to perform official duties.

honores alicui mandare, deferre—to invest a person with a position of dignity.

muneri aliquem praeficere, praeponere—to appoint some one to an office.

munus explere, sustinere—to fulfil the duties of one's position.

abdicare se magistratu (Div. 2. 35)—to resign one's post (before the expiry of the term of office).

*deponere*¹ *magistratum*
abire magistratu
de potestate decedere } to give up, lay down office (usually at the end of one's term of office).

res ad interregnum venit or *adducitur*—an interregnum ensues.

abrogare alicui munus (Verr. 2. 57)—to remove a person from his office.

abrogare alicui imperium—to deprive a person of his position as commandant.

virī clari et honorati (De Sen. 7. 22)—men of rank and dignity.

honoribus ac reipublicae muneribus
perfunctus (De Or. 1. 45)
amplis honoribus usus (Sall. Iug. 25. 4) } a man who has held many offices.

¹ But *deponere* is also found in the sense of *abdicare*, e.g. B. G. 7. 33. 4; N. D. 2. 11; Liv. 2. 28. 9.

(b) PARTICULAR MAGISTRACIES

*consulem creare*¹—to elect a consul.

aliquem consulem declarare (Leg. Agr. 2. 2. 4)—to declare a person consul-elect.

aliquem consulem renuntiare (De Or. 2. 64. 260)—to officially proclaim (by the *praeco*, herald) a man elected consul; to return a man consul.

bis consul—twice consul.

iterum, tertium consul—consul for the second, third time.

sextum (Pis. 9. 20), *septimum consul*—consul for the sixth, seventh time.

videant or *dent operam consules, ne quid res publica detrimenti capiat*² (Catil. 1. 2. 4)—let the consuls take measures for the protection of the state.

in hoc praeclaro consulatu—during this brilliant consulship.

aetas consularis—the consular age (43 years).

pro consule in Ciliciam proficisci—to go to Cilicia as pro-consul.

superiore consulatu—in his former consulship.

dictatorem dicere (creare)—to name a person dictator.

dictaturam gerere—to be dictator.

dictator dicit (legit) magistrum equitum—a dictator appoints a *magister equitum*.

potestatem habet in aliquem vitae necisque (B. G. 1. 16. 5)—he has power over life and death.

lictores summovent turbam (Liv. 4. 50)—the lictors clear the way.

¹ *creare* is used of any magistrate regularly elected. The *locus classicus* on this subject is Cic. De Leg. 3. 3. 6-12.

² This formula conferred absolute power on the consuls. This was done only in cases of great emergency, and was somewhat similar to our "declaration of martial law."

fascēs praeferre, summittere—to walk before with the fascēs; to lower the fascēs.

censores censent populum—the censors hold a census of the people.

censum habere, agere (Liv. 3. 22)—to hold the census.

censuram agere, gerere—to perform censors' duties.

locare aedes, vias faciendas (Phil. 9. 7. 16)—to receive tenders for the construction of temples, highroads.

locare opera publica—to let out public works to contract.

redimere, conducere porticum aedificandam (Div. 2. 21. 47)
—to undertake a contract for building a portico.

nota, animadversio censoria—the reprimand of a censor.

notare aliquem ignominia (Cluent. 43. 119)—to brand a person with infamy.

censu prohibere, excludere—to strike off the burgess-roll.

tribu movere aliquem—to expel some one from his tribe.

e senatu eicere
senatu movere } to expel from the senate.

lustrum condere (Liv. 1. 44. 2)—to complete the censorship (by certain formal purificatory ceremonies = *lustrum faciendo*).

tribuni plebis sacrosancti (Liv. 3. 19. 10)—the plebeian tribunes, whose persons are inviolable.

*appellare*¹ *tribunos plebis (in aliqua re a praetore)* (Liv. 2. 55)
—to appeal to the plebeian tribunes against a praetor's decision.

*provocare*² *ad populum* (Liv. 2. 55)—to appeal to the people.

intercessio tribunicia (cf. p. 218)—the tribunicial veto.

¹ *appellare* as a legal technical term only occurs in classical Latin in the formula *te, vos appello*.

² *provocare* only with proper names, e.g. *ad Catonem provocare*. To appeal to some one's pity, etc. = *implorare alicuius misericordiam, fidem*, etc.

14. THE SENATE

publicum consilium (Phil. 7. 7. 19)—the council of the nation ; the senate.

in senatum legere,¹ *eligere*—to elect to the senate.

senatum vocare, convocare—to call a meeting of the senate.

senatum cogere (Liv. 3. 39)—to assemble the senate.

edicere,² *ut senatus frequens adsit* (Fam. 11. 6. 2)—to issue a proclamation calling on the senators to assemble in full force.

senatum habere—to hold a sitting of the senate.

*ad senatum referre*³ (Dom. 53. 136)—to bring a question before the senate (of the presiding magistrate).

patres (senatum) consulere de aliqua re (Sall. Jug. 28)—to consult the senators on a matter.

sententiam rogare, interrogare—to ask the opinion of . . .

sententiam dicere—to give an opinion (also used of a judge, cf. p. 79).

senatus sententia inclinatur ad . . . (De Sen. 6. 16)—the senate inclines to the opinion, decides for . . .

sententia vincit (Liv. 2. 4. 3)—the majority were of the opinion . . .

maior pars—the majority.

¹ Distinct from *senatum legere* = to read over and revise the list of senators (used of the censor). The head of the list was called *princeps senatus*.

² *edicere, edictum*, technical terms ; *edicere* is used of the praetor deciding how a case is to be tried, cf. Verr. 2. 1. 41 ; Flacc. 28. 67. Then more generally of an order, declaration, proclamation. The senate was convened by the *praeco* or by means of a notice posted in some public place (*edictum*).

³ A meeting of the senate opened by a declaration of the agenda by the presiding magistrate, a consul, praetor, or tribune. This was called *referre ad senatum*.

quid censes? quid tibi videtur? } what is your opinion?
quid de ea re fieri placet? }

discessionem facere (Sest. 34. 74)—to take the vote (by division).

discedere (*pedibus*), *ire in alicuius sententiam*¹ (Liv. 23. 10)—to vote for some one's motion.

senatus decrevit (*populusque iussit*) *ut*—the senate decreed (and the people ratified the decree) that . . .

senatus consultum fit (Att. 2. 24. 3)—a resolution of the senate (not opposed by a tribunicial veto) was made.

senatus auctoritas—the opinion of the senate in general.

senatum alicui dare (Q. Fr. 2. 11. 2)—to give a man audience before the senate.

a senatu res ad populum reicitur—a matter is referred (for decision) from the senate to the people.

dicendi mora diem extrahere, eximere, tollere—to pass the whole day in discussion.

*dimittere senatum*¹—to dismiss the senate.

nox senatum dirimit—night breaks up the sitting.

¹ After the *rogatio sententiarum* came the voting, usually by division (*per discessionem, pedibus ire in sententiam*), but in cases of doubt each member was asked his opinion (*per singulorum sententias exquisitas*). The presiding officer then dismissed the meeting with the words *nihil vos moramur, patres conscripti*, "I need not detain you any longer." From this formula probably came the colloquial uses—(1) "I do not care for . . .," "I have no interest in . . ." (with the Acc.); (2) "I have nothing against . . .," "you have my consent to . . ." (with the Acc. and Inf. or *quominus*).

XV. LAW AND JUSTICE

1. LAW IN GENERAL

ius dicere } to administer justice (said of the
ius reddere (Liv. 3. 33) } praetor).

ius suum persequi—to assert one's right.

ius suum adipisci (Liv. 1. 32. 10)—to obtain justice.

ius suum tenere, obtinere—to maintain one's right.

de iure suo decedere or *cedere*—to waive one's right.

(*ex*) *iure, lege agere cum aliquo*—to go to law with a person.

summo iure agere cum aliquo (cf. *summum ius, summa iniuria*)—to proceed against some one with the utmost rigour of the law; to strain the law in one's favour.

in ius, in iudicium vocare aliquem—to summon some one before the court.

diem dicere alicui—to summon some one to appear on a given day; to accuse a person.

in iudicium venire, in iudicio adesse—to appear in court.

iudicia administrare—to have charge of the administration of justice.

iudicium exercere (*vid.* p. 51, note)—to administer justice; to judge (used of criminal cases before the praetor).

iudicio praeesse—to be president of a court.

conventus agere (B. G. 1. 54)—to convene the assizes (used of a provincial governor).

quaestiones perpetuae (Brut. 27. 106)—the standing commissions of inquiry.

aliquem in integrum (*vid.* p. 47, note) *restituere*—to reinstate a person in his right.

- (1) *respondere*¹ (*de iure* or *ius*)—to give a legal opinion, decision on points of law.
- (2) *cavere (in iure)* (Off. 2. 65)—to point out what precautions, what formal steps must be taken to insure immunity.
- (3) *agere*—to be energetic in the conduct of the case; to plead before the judge.
- aequum iudicem se alicui praebere*—to judge some one equitably.
- ex aequo et bono* (Caecin. 23. 65)—justly and equitably.
- iudex incorruptus*—an impartial judge.
- ratio iudiciorum*—judicial organisation.
- aequa iuris descriptio* (Off. 2. 4. 15)—a sound judicial system.
- aequo iure vivere cum aliquo*—to live with some one on an equal footing.
- iustitium indicere, edicere* (Phil. 5. 12)—to proclaim that the courts are closed, a cessation of legal business.
- iustitium remittere*—to re-open the courts.
- ius ad artem redigere*—to reduce law to a system.
- ius nullum*—absence of justice.
- ius ac fas omne delere* } to trample all law under foot.
omnia iura pervertere }
- contra ius fasque*—against all law, human and divine.
- optimo iure*—with full right.

¹ In full *consulenti respondere*. From this consultation lawyers got the title *iuris* or *iure consulti*. In these three points, *respondere*, *cavere*, *agere*, consisted the practical duty of a jurist. Cicero, however (De Or. I. 48), adds *scribere*=to draw up legal instruments such as wills, contracts, etc.

ius praecipuum, beneficium, donum, also *immunitas*¹ c. Gen.
—prerogative, privilege.

2. INQUIRY—TESTIMONY—TORTURE

aliquid, causam cognoscere } to hold an inquiry into a
quaerere aliquid or *de aliqua re* } matter.

quaestionem habere de aliquo, de aliqua re or *in aliquem*—
to examine a person, a matter.

quaestioni praeesse—to preside over an inquiry.

quaesitor—the examining judge.

incognita causa (cf. p. 241, *indicta causa*)—without any
examination.

in tabulas publicas referre aliquid—to enter a thing in the
public records.

deprehendere aliquem (in aliqua re)—to catch a person,
find him out.

deprehendere aliquem in manifesto scelere—to take a person
in the act.

testis gravis—an important witness.

testis locuples—a witness worthy of all credit.

testis incorruptus atque integer—an impartial witness.

aliquem testem alicuius rei (in aliquid) citare—to cite a
person to give evidence on a matter.

aliquem testem adhibere }
aliquo teste uti } to use some one's evidence.

aliquem testem dare, edere, pro-
ferre }
aliquem testem producere } to produce as a witness.

¹ *privilegium* in this sense is post-classical. In classical prose it denotes a law passed for or against an individual (*privus*), e.g. *privilegium ferre, irrogare de aliquo* (Cic.)

testem prodire (in aliquem)—to appear as witness against a person.

testimonium dicere pro aliquo—to give evidence on some one's behalf.

pro testimonio dicere—to state as evidence.

testibus teneri, convictum esse—to be convicted by some one's evidence.

alicui admovere tormenta
quaerere tormentis de aliquo } to have a person tortured.

de servis quaerere (in dominum)—to examine slaves by torture.

cruciatūs tormentorum—the pains of torture.

aliquem a ceteris separare et in arcam conicere ne quis cum eo colloqui possit (Mil. 22. 60)—to isolate a witness.

3. PROCESS—DEFENCE

causa privata—a civil case.

causa publica (Brut. 48. 178)—a criminal case.

causam alicuius agere (apud iudicem)—to conduct a person's case (said of an agent, solicitor).

causam dicere, orare (Brut. 12. 47)—to address the court (of the advocate).

causam dicere—to defend oneself before the judge (of the accused).

causam dicere pro aliquo—to defend a person.

causam alicuius defendere—to conduct some one's defence in a case.

causam optimam habere (Lig. 4. 10)—to have a good case.

causam inferiorem dicendo reddere superiorem (τὸν ἥττω λόγον κρείττω ποιεῖν) (Brut. 8. 30)—to gain a weak case by clever pleading.

*patronus*¹ (*causae*) (De Or. 2. 69)—counsel ; advocate.

causam suscipere

ad causam aggredi or *accedere* } to undertake a case.

indicta causa (opp. *cognita causa*)—without going to law.

litem alicui intendere—to go to law with, sue a person.

adhuc sub iudice lis est (Hor. A. P. 77)—the case is still undecided.

lites componere (Verg. Ecl. 3. 108)—to arrange a dispute (by arbitration).

causam or *litem obtinere* } to win a case.
causā or *iudicio vincere* }

causam or *litem amittere*, *per-*
dere } to lose one's case.
causā or *lite cadere* (owing to
 some informality) }

calumniae litium (Mil. 27. 74)—chicanery (specially of wrongfully accusing an innocent man).

4. ACCUSATION—VERDICT—DECISION

accusatio (Cael. 3. 6)—a criminal accusation.

actio, *petitio*—a private, civil prosecution.

nomen alicuius deferre (*apud praetorem*) (Verr. 2. 38. 94)—to accuse, denounce a person.

referre in reos aliquem—to put some one on the list of the accused.

eximere de reis aliquem—to strike a person's name off the list of the accused.

aliquis reus fit (Fam. 13. 54)—some one is accused.

¹ They were not called *advocati* till under the Empire. In Augustan Latin *advocatus* = *amicus qui adest alicui (in iudicio)*, i.e. a man who supported his friend by his presence and influence.

iudices reicere (Verr. 3. 11. 28)—to challenge, reject jury-men.

crimina diluere, dissolvere—to refute charges.

accusare aliquem rei capitalis (rerum capitalium)—to charge some one with a capital offence.

caput alicuius agitur (*vid.* p. 53)—a person's life is in jeopardy.

accusare aliquem peculatus, pecuniae publicae—to accuse some one of malversation, embezzlement of public money.

*accusare aliquem falsarum tabularum*¹—to accuse a person of forging the archives.

*postulare aliquem repetundarum*² or *de repetundis*—to accuse a person of extortion (to recover the sums extorted).

accusare aliquem perduellionis—to charge a person with treason (hostile conduct against the state generally).

accusare aliquem maiestatis—to accuse a person of high treason (more specific than the preceding).

accusare aliquem ambitus, de ambitu—to accuse some one of illegal canvassing.

accusare aliquem de vi, de veneficiis—to accuse a person of violence, poisoning.

accusare aliquem inter sicarios (Rosc. Am. 32. 90)—to accuse a person of assassination.

sententiae iudicum—the finding of the jury.

sententiam ferre, dicere (Off. 3. 16. 66)—to give sentence (of the judge, cf. p. 79, note).

¹ Cf. *tabulas publicas corrumpere* (Rosc. Am. 128) ; *commutare*, to falsify public records.

² Extortion generally can be rendered by *violenta exactio pecuniarum*, or some verbal periphrasis (e.g. *per vim capere pecunias*, etc.)

iudicare causam (*de aliqua re*)—to decide on the conduct of the case.

iudicium rescindere
res iudicatas rescindere (Sall. 22. 63) } to rescind a decision.
lege Plautia damnari (Sall. Cat. 31. 4)—to be condemned under the Lex Plautia.

5. GUILT

in culpa esse—to be at fault ; to blame ; culpable.

culpa alicuius rei est in aliquo—some one is to blame in a matter ; it is some one's fault.

mea culpa est—it is my fault.

culpa carere, vacare
extra culpam esse
abesse a culpa } to be free from blame.

prope abesse a culpa
affinem esse culpae } to be almost culpable.

culpam in aliquem conferre, transferre, conicere—to put the blame on another.

culpam alicui attribuere, assignare—to attribute the fault to some one.

aliquid alicui crimini dare, vitio vertere (Verr. 5. 50)—to reproach, blame a person for . . .

culpam committere, contrahere
facinus, culpam in se admittere } to commit some blame-worthy action.

non committere, ut . . .—to take care not to . . .

culpam alicuius rei sustinere—to bear the blame of a thing.

*culpam a se amovere*¹—to exonerate oneself from blame.

veniam dare alicui—to pardon a person.

¹ Note *purgare aliquid*, to justify oneself in a matter ; *se alicui purgare de aliqua re* (Fam. 12. 25) ; *alicui purgatum esse* (B. G. 1. 28).

6. PUNISHMENT—ACQUITTAL

- poena afficere aliquem* (Off. 2. 5. 18)
animadvertere in aliquem
punire aliquem
ulcisci aliquem (*pro aliqua re*)
- } to punish some one.
- poenas alicuius persequi*
poenam petere, repetere ab aliquo
poenas expetere ab aliquo
supplicium sumere de aliquo
- } to exact a penalty from some one.
- hanc poenam constituere in aliquem, ut . . .*—to ordain as punishment that . . .
- graviter consulere in aliquem* (Liv. 8. 13)—to deal severely with a person.
- poenas* (*graves*) *dare alicui*—to be (heavily) punished by some one.
- poenas alicui pendere* (*alicuius rei*)—to be punished by some one (on account of a thing).
- poenas dependere, expendere,olvere, persolvere*
poenam (*alicuius rei*) *ferre, perferre*
- } to suffer punishment.
- poenam luere* (*alicuius rei*) (Sull. 27. 76)—to be punished for a thing, expiate it.
- luere*¹ *aliquid aliqua re* (De Sen. 20)—to atone for something by . . .
- poenam subire*—to submit to a punishment.
- pecunia multare aliquem*—to condemn some one to a fine.

¹ To express the passive use *expiari*, e.g. *scelus supplicio expiatum est*.

multam irrogare alicui (Dom. 17. 45)—to impose a fine (used of the prosecutor or the *tribunus plebis* proposing a fine to be ratified by the people).

decem milibus aeris damnari—to be fined 10,000 asses.

in vincula (custodiam) dare aliquem
in vincula, in catenas conicere ali-
quem

}

to put some one in
 irons, chains.

in carcerem conicere aliquem—to throw some one into prison.

capitis or *capite damnare aliquem*—to condemn some one to death.

capitis absolvere aliquem—to repeal a death-sentence passed on a person.

supplicium alicui decernere, in aliquem constituere—to decree the penalty of death.

Solo capite sanxit, si quis . . . (Att. 10. 1)—Solon made it a capital offence to . . .

morte multare aliquem (Catil. I. II. 28)—to punish any one with death.

supplicium sumere de aliquo—to execute the death-sentence on a person.

supplicio (capitis) affici—to suffer capital punishment.

ad palum deligare (Liv. 2. 5)—to bind to the stake.

virgis caedere—to beat with rods.

securi percutere, ferire aliquem—to execute a person, cut off his head.

in crucem agere, tollere aliquem
cruci suffigere aliquem } to crucify.

impune fecisse, tulisse aliquid—to go unpunished.

impunitum aliquem dimittere—to let a person go scot-free.

*mortem*¹ *deprecari* (B. G. 7. 40. 6)—to beg for life.

¹ One can also say *vitam, salutem deprecari*, as *deprecari* means (1) to obtain by supplication, (2) to avert by supplication.

XVI. WAR

I. LEVIES—MILITARY OATH—ARMIES IN GENERAL

aetas militaris—military age.

qui arma ferre possunt or *iuventus*—men of military age.

qui per aetatem arma ferre non possunt or *aetate ad bellum inutiles*—men exempt from service owing to age.

exercitum conficere (Imp. Pomp. 21. 61)—to raise an army.

milites (exercitum) scribere, conscribere—to levy troops.

dilectum habere—to hold a levy.

imperare milites civitatibus—to compel communities to provide troops.

nomen (nomina) dare, profiteri—to enlist oneself.

ad nomen non respondere (Liv. 7. 4)—to fail to answer one's name.

militiam (only in the sing.) *capessere*—to take service in the army.

militiam detrectare, subterfugere—to try to avoid military service.

excusare morbum, valetudinem—to plead ill-health as an excuse for absence.

militiae vacationem habere—to be excused military duty.

equo, pedibus merere (Liv. 27. 11)—to serve in the cavalry, infantry.

sacramentum (*o*) *dicere* (*vid.* p. 179, note)—to take the military oath.

milites sacramento rogare, adigere—to make soldiers take the military oath.

evocare undique copias—to call up troops from all sides.

evocati, voluntarii (B. G. 5. 56)—the volunteers.

omnes ad arma convocare—to issue a general call to arms.

efficere duas legiones—to form two legions.

complere legiones (B. C. 1. 25)—to fill up the numbers of the legions.

supplementum cogere, scribere, legere—to levy recruits to fill up the strength.

*auxilia*¹ *arcessere*—to summon auxiliary troops.

copias (arma) cum aliquo iungere or *se cum aliquo iungere*—to join forces with some one.

conducere, contrahere copias—to concentrate troops.

cogere omnes copias in unum locum—to concentrate all the troops at one point.

parare exercitum, copias—to equip an army, troops.

alere exercitum (Off. 1. 8. 25)—to support an army.

recensere, lustrare, recognoscere exercitum (Liv. 42. 31)—to review an army.

demittere exercitum—to disband an army.

commeatum militibus dare (opp. *petere*)—to give furlough, leave of absence to soldiers.

magnae copiae (not *multae*)—a large force, many troops.

exiguae copiae (Fam. 3. 3. 2)—a small force.

ingens, maximus exercitus (not *numerosus*)—a numerous army.

robora peditum—the flower of the infantry.

milites levis armaturae—light infantry.

¹ *auxilia*=auxiliary troops raised in the provinces, usually light cavalry. In Caesar's army the cavalry consisted of Gaulish, Spanish, and German auxiliaries. A thousand of these were attached to each legion and were usually commanded by a Roman officer.

vetus miles, veteranus miles } veterans; experienced
qui magnum in castris usum habent } troops.

expeditus (opp. *impeditus*) *miles*—a soldier lightly armed, ready for battle.

exercitatus in armis—practised in arms.

*milites tumultuarii*¹ (opp. *exercitus iustus*) (Liv. 35. 2)—soldiers collected in haste; irregulars.

tirones—recruits.

2. PAY—SERVICE—COMMISSARIAT

*stipendium*² *dare, numerare, persolvere militibus*—to pay the troops.

stipendia facere, merere—to serve.

emeritis stipendiis (Sall. Jug. 84. 2)—after having completed one's service.

militia functum, perfunctum esse }
*rude donatum esse*³ (Phil. 2. 29) } to retire from service.

milites mercennarii or *exercitus conducticius*—mercenary troops.

rem frumentariam comparare,
providere
rei frumentariae prospicere (B. G. 1. 23) } to look after the commissariat.

¹ *tumultus* is used of a sudden rising, rebellion, to repress which all able-bodied men were called to arms. Such risings were particularly common in Gaul, but cf. *tumultus servilis* (B. G. 1. 10); *tumultus Istricus* (Liv. 41. 6. 1).

² *stipendium* first established in 406 B.C.; it was paid at the end of the campaign, hence *stipendia* often = campaigns, years of service.

³ Used originally of gladiators, who on their retirement received a staff or wooden sword (*rudis*), hence they were called *rudarii*. Cf. Ov. Tr. 4. 8. 24 *me quoque donari iam rude tempus erat*.

frumentum providere exercitui—to provide corn-supplies for the troops.

frumenti vim maximam comparare—to procure a very large supply of corn.

intercludere commeatum—to cut off the supplies, intercept them.

intercludere, prohibere hostes commeatu—to cut off all supplies of the enemy.

3. COMMAND—DISCIPLINE

praeficere aliquem exercitui—to place some one at the head of an army, give him the command.

praeficere aliquem bello gerendo—to charge some one with the conduct of a war.

praeesse exercitui—to be at the head of an army.

magnum usum in re militari habere (Sest. 5. 12)—to possess great experience in military matters.

rei militaris rudem esse—to have had no experience in war.

vir fortissimus—a hero.

magnas res gerere—to perform heroic exploits.

res fortiter feliciterque gesta } a success; a glorious feat of
res bene gesta } arms.

*res gestae*¹—exploits in war; brilliant actions.

summa belli, imperii (B. G. 2. 4. 7)—the command-in-chief.

cum imperio esse—to hold a high command.

¹ Thus *magnae, memorabiles, praestantissimae res gestae*, and also *meae, tuae, suae*, etc. The phrase *rem gerere* can be used either of the combat (*proelium*) or the whole war (*bellum*), cf. B. G. 5. 44. 11; Off. 3. 108.

imperii summam tenere (Rep. 2. 28) } to be commander-
imperii summae praeesse } in-chief.

imperii summam deferre alicui or *ad aliquem, tradere alicui*
 —to appoint some one commander-in-chief.

imperium transfertur ad aliquem (not *transit*)—the command is transferred, passes to some one.

imperium alicui abrogare (Off. 3. 10)—to depose a person from his command.

*modestia*¹ (opp. *immodestia*)—discipline (insubordination).

dicto audientem esse alicui—to obey a person's orders.

milites disciplina coërcere
milites coërcere et in officio } to keep good discipline
continere (B. C. I. 67. 4) } amongst one's men.

4. WEAPONS

arma capere, sumere—to take up one's arms.

arma expedire (Tusc. 2. 16. 37)—to make ready for battle.

galeam induere—to put on one's helmet.

armis (castris) exuere aliquem—to disarm a person.

arma ponere (not *deponere*)—to pile arms (cf. p. 189, note).

ab armis discedere (Phil. 11. 33)—to lay down arms.

in armis esse—to be under arms.

cum telo esse—to be armed.

extorquere arma e manibus—to wrest weapons from some one's hands.

¹ *modestia*, the character of the man who observes a mean (*qui servat modum*), is used morally of self-restraint, moderation (*σωφροσύνη*). In politics it means loyalty; in the army, discipline.

res ad arma venit—matters have reached the fighting-stage.

tela iacere, conicere, mittere—to discharge missiles.

extra teli iactum, coniectum esse—to be out of range.

ad teli coniectum venire (Liv. 2. 31)—to come within javelin-range.

se obicere telis—to expose oneself to missiles.

eminus hastis, comminus gladiis uti—to use javelins at a distance, swords at close quarters.

gladium educere (e vagīna)—to draw one's sword (from the scabbard).

gladium in vaginam recondere—to sheath one's sword.

gladium stringere, destringere—to draw one's sword.

gladium alicui in pectus infigere—to plunge one's sword in some one's breast.

gladio aliquem per pectus transfigere (Liv. 2. 46)—to transfix, pierce a man's breast with one's sword.

*sicam, cultrum in corde alicuius defigere*¹ (Liv. 1. 58)—to plunge a dagger, knife in some one's heart.

decurrere (in armis)—to manoeuvre.

vi et armis—by force of arms.

5. WAR

bellum parare—to make preparations for war.

apparātūs (rare in plur.) *belli*—preparations for war; war-material.

bellum indicere, denuntiare—to make formal declaration of war.

¹ *defigere* is also used metaphorically, e.g. *defigere omnes curas, cogitationes in rei publicae salute* (Phil. 14. 5. 13).

- res repetere (ab aliquo)* (Off. 1. 11. 36)—to demand satisfaction, restitution.
- res reddere (alicui)* (cf. p. 57)—to make restitution.
- bellum iustum (pium)*—a regular, formal war.
- bellum intestinum, domesticum* (opp. *bellum externum*)—a civil war.
- bellum facere, movere, excitare*—to cause a war.
- bellum conflare* (Fam. 5. 2. 8)—to kindle a war.
- bellum moliri*—to meditate war.
- bellum incipere, belli initium facere* (B. G. 7. 1. 5)—to commence hostilities.
- bello se interponere* (Liv. 35. 48)—to interfere in a war.
- bello implicari*—to be involved in a war.
- bellum cum aliquo inire*—to begin a war with some one.
- bellum impendet, imminet, instat*—a war is imminent.
- bellum oritur, exardescit*—war breaks out.
- omnia bello flagrant* or *ardent* (Fam. 4. 1. 2)—everywhere the torch of war is flaming.
- bellum gerere cum aliquo*—to make war on a person.
- bellum coniungere* (Imp. Pomp. 9. 26)—to wage war in conjunction with some one.
- bellum ducere, trahere, extrahere*—to protract, prolong a war.
- omni studio in (ad) bellum incumbere*—to carry on a war energetically.
- bellum inferre alicui* (Att. 9. 1. 3)—to invade.
- bellum* or *arma ultro inferre*—to be the aggressor in a war ; to act on the offensive.
- bellum (inlatum) defendere*—to act on the defensive.
- proficisci ad bellum, in expeditionem* (Sall. Jug. 103)—to go to war, commence a campaign.
- mittere ad bellum*—to send to the war.

bellum administrare—to have the control of the war.

bello persequi aliquem, lacerare—to harass with war.

belli finem facere, bellum finire—to put an end to a war.

bellum conficere, perficere—to terminate a war (by force of arms and defeat of one's opponents).

bellum componere (Fam. 10. 33)—to terminate a war (by a treaty, etc.)

bellum transferre alio, in . . .—to transfer the seat of war elsewhere.

belli sedes (Liv. 4. 31)—the seat of war, theatre of operations.

rationem belli gerendi mutare (Liv. 32. 31)—to change one's tactics.

6. THE ARMY ON THE MARCH

agmen medium (Liv. 10. 41)—the centre of the marching column.

agmen primum—the vanguard.

agmen novissimum (extremum)—the rearguard.

agmen claudere, cogere—to bring up the rear.

*signa*¹ *ferre, tollere* } to begin the march, break up the
castra movere } camp.

agmen agere—to set the army in motion.

¹ *signa*=standards of a maniple, cohort, or legion. Since Marius' time the *signum* of a legion was an eagle, those of the maniples different animals, wolf, horse, etc. In the camp the standards were fixed in the ground, in action they were carried in the front rank, hence several phrases—*signa convellere, tollere, efferre*, to break up camp; *signa proferre, promovere*, to advance in battle-order; *signa inferre*, to attack; *signa conferre*, to come to close quarters; *signa statuere*, to halt; *signa convertere*, to change one's route; *signa referre*, to retire; *signa relinquere*, to desert, etc.

procedere cum exercitu—to advance with the army.

magnis itineribus (Sall. Jug. 37)—by forced marches.

quam maximis itineribus (*potest*)—by the longest possible forced marches.

citatum agmen rapere } to lead the army with forced
raptim agmen ducere } marches.

citato gradu incedere (cf. p. 15)—to advance rapidly.

loca, regiones, loci naturam explorare—to reconnoitre the ground.

iter facere—to march.

iter conficere (B. C. 1. 70)—to traverse a route.

iter maturare, accelerare—to quicken the pace of marching.

iter continuare (B. C. 3. 11)—to march without interruption.

iter non intermittere—not to interrupt the march.

iter flectere, convertere, avertere } to deviate, change the
signa convertere (B. G. 1. 25) } direction.

averso itinere contendere in . . .—to change one's route and march towards . . .

iter tentare per vim (cf. p. 11)—to force a way, a passage.

agmen, exercitum demittere in . . .—to march down on to . . .

exercitum admovere, adducere ad . . .—to advance on . . .

signa sequi (opp. *a signis discedere, signa relinquere*)—to follow the standards.

ordines servare (B. G. 4. 26)—to keep the ranks.

confertis, solutis ordinibus—with close ranks; with ranks in disorder.

raris ordinibus—in open order.

ordines turbare, perrumpere—to break the ranks.

agmine quadrato incedere, ire—to march with closed ranks,
in order of battle.

agmine duplici, triplici—in two, three columns.

novissimos premere—to press the rearguard.

novissimos turbare—to throw the rearguard into confusion.

novissimos carpere—to harass the rear.

novissimis praesidio esse—to protect the troops in the rear.

opprimere hostes (imprudentes, incautos, inopinantes)—to
surprise and defeat the enemy.

subsistere, consistere }
gradum sistere } to halt.

capere, occupare locum—to occupy a position (with troops).

occupare loca superiora—to occupy the high ground.

praeoccupare locum (Liv. 35. 27)—to occupy a place
beforehand.

tenere montem (B. G. 1. 22)—to hold a mountain.

consistere in monte—to take up one's position on a
mountain.

considerē sub monte (sub montis radicibus)—to occupy the
foot of a hill.

praesidiis firmare urbem }
praesidium collocare in urbe } to garrison a town.

praesidia, custodias disponere—to station posts, pickets, at
intervals.

vigilias crebras ponere (Sall. Jug. 45. 2)—to place a close
line of sentry-posts.

7. THE CAMP

castra stativa (Sall. Jug. 44)—a permanent camp.

castra hiberna, aestiva—winter-quarters, summer-quarters.

castra ponere, locare—to encamp.

idoneo, aequo, suo (opp. *iniquo*) *loco*—in a favourable position.

castra metari (B. C. 3. 13)—to mark out a camp.

milites in hibernis collocare, in hiberna deducere—to take the troops to their winter-quarters.

castra munire—to make a fortified, entrenched camp.

castra munire vallo (*aggere*)—to fortify the camp with a rampart.

fossam ducere—to make a ditch, a fosse.

vallum iacere, exstruere, facere—to raise a rampart, earth-work.

castra praesidiis firmare—to strengthen the camp by outposts.

praesidio castris milites relinquere—to leave troops to guard the camp.

castra coniungere, iungere (B. C. 1. 63)—to make a camp in common.

castra nudare (B. G. 7. 70)—to leave the camp undefended.

cohors, quae in statione est—the cohort on guard-duty.

vigilias agere in castris (Verr. 4. 43)—to mount guard in the camp.

custodias agere in vallo—to keep watch on the rampart.

stationes agere pro portis—to be on duty before the gates.

circumire vigilias (Sall. Jug. 45. 2)—to make the round of the sentries.

tesseram dare (Liv. 28. 14)—to give the watchword, countersign.

copias castris continere—to keep the troops in camp.

se (quietum) tenere castris—to remain inactive in camp.

excursionem in hostium agros facere—to make an inroad into hostile territory.

praedatum ire—to go in search of plunder, booty.

*ferre atque agere*¹ *praedam*—to carry off booty.

capere equos—to capture horses.

lignatum, aquatum ire—to go to fetch wood, water.

pabulatum, frumentatum ire—to forage.

pabulatione premi (B. C. I. 78)—to suffer from want of forage.

omnia ferro ignique, ferro atque igni or *ferro flammaque vastare*—to ravage with fire and sword.

classicum or *tuba canit ad praetorium*—the bugle, trumpet sounds before the general's tent.

vasa conclamare (B. C. 3. 37)—to give the signal for breaking up the camp, collecting baggage.

vasa colligere (Liv. 21. 47)—to pack the baggage (for marching).

signa convellere (*vid.* p. 253, note)—to pluck up the standards out of the ground (to begin the march).

consilium habere, convocare—to hold a council of war.

rem ad consilium deferre—to refer a matter to a council of war.

8. A SIEGE

oppidum natura loci munitum (B. G. I. 38)—a town with a strong natural position.

oppidum manu (opere) munitum—a town artificially fortified.

oppidum obsidere
oppidum obsidione claudere } to besiege a city.

oppidum in obsidione tenere—to keep a town in a state of siege.

¹ *ferre* of things inanimate, *agere* of cattle. Cf. *φέρειν καὶ ἄγειν*.

oppidum fame domare—to starve a town into surrender.

oppidum oppugnare—to storm a town.

oppidum claudere operibus (Nep. Milt. 7)—to invest a town with earthworks.

oppidum cingere vallo et fossa—to surround a town with a rampart and fosse.

opera facere—to raise siege-works.

vineas agere (B. G. 3. 21)—to advance pent-houses, mantlets.

turres instituere, exstruere—to raise towers.

testudine facta moenia subire (B. G. 2. 6)—to advance to the walls protected by a covering of shields.

scalas admovere (B. C. 3. 63)—to apply scaling-ladders.

positis scalis muros ascendere—to scale the walls by means of ladders.

aries murum attingit, percutit—the battering-ram strikes the wall.

iter ruina patefactum
patentia ruinis (vid. p. 185, note) } a breach.

cuniculos agere (B. G. 3. 21)—to make mines, subterraneous passages.

oppidum tormentis verberare—to rain missiles on a town, bombard it.

tela ingerere, conicere—to discharge showers of missiles.

murum nudare defensoribus—to drive the defenders from the walls.

eruptionem facere ex oppido
crebras ex oppido excursiones
facere (B. G. 2. 30) } to make a sally, sortie from the town.

ignem inferre operibus (B. C. 2. 14)—to set fire to the siege-works.

subsidium alicui summittere—to send relief to some one.

munitiones perrumpere—to break through the lines (and relieve a town).

urbis obsidionem liberare } to raise a siege (used of the
oppidum obsidione liberare } army of relief).

obsidionem quattuor menses sustinere—to hold out for four months.

oppugnationem, obsidionem relinquere—to give up an assault, a siege.

portas obstruere (B. G. 5. 50)—to barricade the gates.

portas refringere
claustra portarum revellere } to break down the gates.

in oppidum irrumperere
in oppidum irruptionem facere } to break into the town.

oppidum capere, expugnare—to take, storm a town.

oppidum recipere—to retake a town.

oppidum incendere—to fire a town.

oppidum diripere—to plunder a town.

oppidum evertere, excidere—to completely destroy a town.

oppidum solo aequare—to raze a town to the ground.

deditione facta (Sall. Jug. 26)—after capitulation.

arma tradere—to surrender weapons.

salutem petere a victore—to beg for mercy from the conqueror.

se suaque omnia dedere victori } to give up one's person
se suaque omnia permittere } and all one's posses-
victoris potestati } sions to the conqueror.

se permittere in fidem atque in potestatem alicuius (B. G. 2. 3)
 —to surrender oneself to the discretion of some one.

in fidem recipere aliquem (Fam. 13. 16)—to deal mercifully with some one.

- libera corpora sub corona (hasta) veneunt* (B. G. 3. 16. 4)
 —the free men are sold as slaves.
cum uxoribus et liberis—with wife and child.
aliquem (incolumem) conservare—to grant a man his life.

9. BEFORE THE FIGHT

- potestatem, copiam pugnandi hostibus facere*—to offer battle to the enemy.
potestatem sui facere (alicui) (cf. p. 196, notes)—to accept battle.
proelio (ad pugnam) hostes lacessere, provocare—to provoke the enemy to battle.
pugnam detrectare (Liv. 3. 60)—to decline battle.
supersedere proelio—to refrain from fighting.
hostem e manibus non dimittere—to not let the enemy escape.
locum ad pugnam idoneum deligere—to choose suitable ground for an engagement.
diem pugnae constituere (B. G. 3. 24)—to fix a day for the engagement.
signum proelii (committendi) exposcere (B. G. 7. 19)—to demand loudly the signal to engage.
signum proelii dare—to give the signal to engage.
vexillum proponere (Liv. 22. 3)—to fix the ensign on the general's tent (as a signal to commence the engagement).
ad arma concurrere—to rush to arms.
exercitum educere or *producere in aciem*—to lead the army to the fight.
ad vim et arma descendere (vid. p. 54, notes)—to have recourse to force of arms.

in certamen descendere—to engage in the fight.

in aciem descendere (Liv. 8. 8)—to enter the field of battle.

aciem (*copias, exercitum*) *instruere* or *in acie constituere*—to draw up forces in battle-order.

aciem triplicem instruere (B. G. 1. 24) to draw up the army in three lines.

aciem explicare or *dilatare*—to extend the line of battle, deploy the battalions.

media acies—the centre.

subsidia collocare—to station reserve troops.

equites ad latera disponere (B. G. 6. 8)—to place the cavalry on the wings.

contionari apud milites (B. C. 1. 7) } to harangue the sol-
contionem habere apud milites } diers.

ad virtutem excitare, cohortari (or simply *adhortari, cohortari*)
 —to incite to valour.

animos militum confirmare (B. G. 5. 49)—to encourage, embolden the soldiery.

10. THE FIGHT

(a) THE FIGHT IN GENERAL

proelium committere—(1) to begin the battle, (2) to give battle.

proelium inire (Liv. 2. 14)—to engage.

proelium facere—to give battle.

proelio equestri contendere } to give battle with a cavalry-
proelium equestre facere } division.

proelium facere secundum } to fight successfully.
proeliis secundis uti }

rem (*bene, male*) *gerere* (*vid.* p. 187, note)—to win, lose a fight (of the commander).

proelium intermittere—to interrupt the battle.

proelium dirimere (B. C. 1. 40)—to break off the fight.

proelium restituere—to renew the battle with success.

proelium renovare, redintegrare—to begin the fight again.

proelium deserere—to give up the fight.

proelio, armis decertare (B. G. 1. 50)—to fight a decisive battle.

acie (armis, ferro) decernere
in acie dimicare } to fight a pitched battle.

proelio interesse—to take part in the engagement.

ex equo pugnare—to fight on horseback.

certamen singulare—single combat.

provocare aliquem ad certamen singulare—to challenge some one to single combat.

proelium cruentum, atrox—a bloody battle.

proelium iustum (opp. *tumultuarium*)—a pitched battle.

(b) THE ATTACK

classicum canit (B. C. 3. 82)—the trumpet sounds for the attack.

gradum inferre in hostem—to march on the enemy.

aggredi hostem
invadere, impetum¹ facere in
hostem } to attack the enemy.
signa inferre in hostem

impetum sustinere (B. G. 1. 26)—to resist the attack, onset.

impetum excipere² (Liv. 6. 12)—to parry the attack.

¹ *impetus* is not used in the dative sing. or in the plur.; these cases are supplied by *incursio*.

² Caesar's method of attack was usually this: the troops drawn up on rising ground charged at the double (*concursum*); when within range came *emissio telorum* or *pilorum*. This was followed up by a hand-to-hand *mêlée* (*impetus gladiatorum*).

in medios hostes se inicere—to rush into the midst of the foe.

per medios hostes (mediam hostium aciem) perrumpere—to break through the enemy's centre.

manum(us) conserere cum hoste } to come to close quar-
*signa conferre cum hoste*¹ } ters.

proelio concurritur (Sall. Jug. 59)—the lines charge in battle one on another.

adversis hostibus occurrere—to attack the enemy in the front.

aversos hostes aggredi } to attack the enemy in the rear.
hostes a tergo adoriri }

iusto (opp. *tumultuario*) *proelio configere cum hoste* (Liv. 35. 4)—to fight a pitched, orderly battle with an enemy.

acies inclinatur or *inclinatur* (Liv. 7. 33)—the line of battle gives way.

proelium anceps est } the issue of the battle is unde-
ancipiti Marte pugnatur } cided.

diu anceps stetit pugna—the issue of the day was for a long time uncertain.

res est in periculo, in summo discrimine—the position is critical.

*res ad triarios*² *redit* (Liv. 8. 8)—the triarii must now fight (proverbially = we are reduced to extremities).

¹ *signa conferre cum aliquo* also sometimes means to join forces.

² The *triarii* were the veterans who made up the third line behind the *principes* and *hastati*. If these first two lines were beaten or in difficulties (*laborare*), the *triarii*, who were in a kneeling posture (*dextro genu innixi*, Liv. 8. 9), stood up (*consurgebant*, Liv. 8. 10) and continued the fight. Hence this proverb (*inde rem ad triarios redisse cum laboratur proverbio increbuit*). For the organisation of the legion in general *vid.* Liv. book 8.

(c) CLOSE QUARTERS

collatis signis (viribus) pugnare—to fight hand-to-hand, at close quarters.

tum pes cum pede collatus est (Liv. 28. 2)—a hand-to-hand engagement ensued.

collato pede (Liv. 6. 12)—hand to hand.

gladio comminus (opp. *eminus*) *rem gerere*—to fight with swords at close quarters.

omissis pilis gladiis rem gerere—to throw down the javelins (*pila*) and fight with the sword.

res ad gladios venit } swords must now decide the
res gladiis geri coepta est } day.

strictis gladiis in hostem ferri—to throw oneself on the enemy with drawn sword.

res ad manus venit—the fighting is now at close quarters.

laxatis (opp. *confertis*) *ordinibus pugnare*—to fight in open order.

*ferarum*¹ *ritu pugnare*—to fight like lions.

manu fortis—personally brave.

(d) TACTICS—REINFORCEMENTS

in latus hostium incurrere—to fall upon the enemy's flank.

circumvenire hostem aversum or *a tergo* (B. G. 2. 26)—to surround the enemy from the rear.

multitudine hostium cingi—to be surrounded by the superior force of the enemy.

¹ The Latin language uses the general term (*fera*) where we use the special (lion). Similarly *pecorum modo fugiunt* (Liv. 40. 27), where we translate "they flee like deer."

equitatu superiorem esse—to have the advantage in cavalry.

parem (opp. *impārem*) *esse hosti*—to be a match for the enemy.

*orbem*¹ *facere* (Sall. Iug. 97. 5) } to form a square.
in orbem consistere

cuneum facere (Liv. 22. 47)—to draw up troops in wedge-formation.

phalangem facere (B. G. 1. 24)—to form a phalanx.

phalangem perfringere—to break through the phalanx.

subsidia summittere—to send up reserves.

integros defatigatis summittere—to send fresh troops to take the place of those wearied with fighting.

rari dispersique pugnare (B. C. 1. 44)—to fight in skirmishing order.

integri et recentes defatigatis succedunt—fresh troops relieve the tired men.

(e) SUCCESSFUL ATTACK

pellere hostem—to repulse the enemy.

acies hostium impellitur—the enemy's line is repulsed.

loco movere, depellere, deicere hostem (B. G. 7. 51)—to drive the enemy from his position.

summovere or *reicere hostium equites*—to repel the attack of the enemy's cavalry.

repellere, propulsare hostem—to repulse an attack.

¹ *orbis* properly a circle, but corresponding almost exactly in its objects to our square-formation (*vid.* B. G. 4. 37, 5. 33; Sall. Iug. 97. 5). For a good account of Roman military formation see Kraner, *Uebersicht des Kriegswesens bei Caesar*, in his edition of the *Bellum Gallicum*.

undique premi, urgeri (B. G. 2. 26)—to be pressed on all sides.

prosternere, profligare hostem—to rout the enemy

(f) RETREAT—FLIGHT—PURSUIT

signa receptui canunt
receptui canitur (B. G. 7. 47) } the retreat is sounded.

pedem referre—to retire (without turning one's back on the enemy).

equitatus tutum receptum dat—the cavalry covers the retreat.

se recipere (B. G. 7. 20)—to withdraw one's forces.

loco excedere—to abandon one's position.

in fugam dare, conicere hostem
fugare hostem } to put the enemy to flight.

fundere hostium copias—to rout the enemy's forces.

caedere et fundere hostem
fundere et fugare hostem } to utterly rout the enemy.

prae se agere hostem—to drive the enemy before one.

fugam facere (Sall. Jug. 53)—(1) to put to flight, (2) to take to flight.

terga vertere or *dare*—to flee, run away.

terga dare hosti—to run away from the enemy.

fugae se mandare (B. G. 2. 24)
fugam capessere, capere
se dare in fugam, fugae
se conicere, se conferre in fugam } to take to flight.

fuga salutem petere—to seek safety in flight.

fuga effusa, praeceps (Liv. 30. 5)—headlong flight.

pecorum modo fugere (Liv. 40. 27)—to flee like deer, sheep.

arma abicere—to throw away one's arms.

praecipitem se fugae mandare—to flee headlong.

ex (in) fuga dissipati or *dispersi* (B. G. 2. 24)—soldiers routed and dispersed.

hostes insequi, prosequi—to pursue the enemy.

hostes (fusus) persequi—to follow up and harass the enemy when in flight.

hostes assequi, consequi—to overtake the enemy.

fugientibus instare—to press the fugitives.

tergis hostium inhaerere—to be on the heels of the enemy.

fugam hostium reprimere (B. G. 3. 14)—to bring the flying enemy to a stand.

excipere aliquem fugientem—to cut off some one's flight.

magna caedes hostium fugientium facta est—there was great slaughter of fugitives.

capere aliquem vivum—to take a person alive.

effugere, elābi e manibus hostium—to escape from the hands of the enemy

dimittere e manibus hostes—to let the enemy escape.

eripere aliquem e manibus hostium—to rescue some one from the hands of the enemy.

se fuga recipere (B. G. 1. 11)—to save oneself by flight.

(g) DEFEAT—MASSACRE—WOUNDS—LOSSES

proelio vinci, superari, inferiorem, victum discedere—to be defeated in fight, lose the battle.

cladem hostibus afferre, inferre—to inflict a defeat on the enemy.

cladem accipere—to suffer a defeat.

ingentem caedem edere (Liv. 5. 13)—to cause great slaughter, carnage.

stragem edere, facere—to massacre.

omnia strata sunt ferro—all have perished by the sword.

hostes, exercitum delere, concidere—to annihilate, cut up the enemy, an army.

<i>hostes ad internecionem caedere,</i>	} to absolutely annihilate the enemy.
<i>delere</i> (Liv. 9. 26)	
<i>hostium copias occisione occidere</i> (Liv. 2. 51)	

vulnus infligere alicui—to wound a person (also used metaphorically).

mortiferam plagam alicui infligere—to inflict a mortal wound on some one.

vulnus (*grave, mortiferum*) *accipere, excipere*—to be (seriously, mortally) wounded.

multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus (B. G. 1. 50)—after many had been wounded on both sides.

vulneribus confectus—weakened by wounds.

<i>vulnera (cicatrices) adversa (opp. aversa)</i>	} wounds (scars) on the breast.
<i>vulnera adverso corpore accepta</i>	

*refricare*¹ *vulnus, cicatricem obductam*—to open an old wound.

ex vulnere mori (Fam. 10. 33)—to die of wounds.

magno cum detrimento—with great loss.

nostri circiter centum ceciderunt—about a hundred of our men fell.

*ad unum omnes*² *perierunt*—they perished to a man.

¹ *refricare* is also used metaphorically in the sense of renewing, recalling, e.g. *dolorem* (De Or. 2. 48); *memoriam* (Phil. 3. 7. 18); *desiderium* (Fam. 5. 17. 4).

² The phrase *ad unum omnes*, to a man, without exception, occurs De Am. 23. 86; Fam. 12. 14; Liv. 2. 55; and without *omnes*, Fam. 10. 16; B. C. 3. 14.

II. VICTORY—TRIUMPH

exercitus victor—the victorious army.

superiorem (opp. *inferiorem*), *victorem* (*proelio*, *pugna*)

discedere—to come off victorious.

victoriam adipisci, *parcere*
victoriam ferre, *referre*
proelio vincere } to gain a victory, win a battle.

victoriam reportare ab hoste—to gain a victory over the enemy.

victoriam praecipere (*animo*) (Liv. 10. 26)—to consider oneself already victor.

victoriam exploratam dimittere—to let a sure victory slip through one's hands.

sicut parta iam atque explorata victoria—as if the victory were already won.

victoriam conclamare (B. G. 5. 37)—to raise a shout of victory.

victoriam or *de victoria gratulari alicui*—to congratulate a person on his victory.

victoria multo sanguine ac vulneribus stetit (Liv. 23. 30)—the victory cost much blood and many wounds, was very dearly bought.

triumphare de aliquo (*ex bellis*)
*triumphum*¹ *agere de* or *ex aliquo* or c. Gen. (*victoriae*,
pugnae) } to triumph over some one.

per triumphum (*in triumpho*) *aliquem ducere*—to lead some one in triumph.

¹ E.g. *triumphum agere Boiorum* (Liv.); *Pharsaliae pugnae* (Cic.); *de Liguribus* (Liv.); *ex Aequis* (Liv.) For other phrases cf. *triumphum postulare*, *imperare*; *triumphum tertium deportare*; *triumphum consulis celebrare*.

triumphum senatus Africano decernit (Fin. 4. 9. 22)—the senate decrees to Africanus the honours of a triumph.

12. TRUCE—PEACE—TREATIES—ALLIANCE

indutias facere (Phil. 8. 7)—to make a truce.

indutias violare—to break a truce.

ius gentium violare—to violate the law of nations.

agere cum aliquo de pace—to treat with some one about peace.

pacem conciliare (Fam. 10. 27)—to bring about a peace.

pacem facere cum aliquo—to make peace with some one.

pacem dirimere, frangere—to break the peace.

his condicionibus—on these terms.

pacis condiciones ferre (not *proponere*)—to propose terms of peace.

pacis condiciones dare, dicere alicui (Liv. 29. 12)—to dictate the terms of peace to some one.

pacis condiciones accipere, subire (opp. *repudiare, respuere*)—to accept the terms of the peace.

pax convēnit in eam condicionem, ut . . .—peace is concluded on condition that . . .

summa pax—deep peace.

captivos permutare, commutare—to exchange prisoners.

captivos redimere (Off. 2. 18)—to ransom prisoners.

captivos sine pretio reddere—to restore prisoners without ransom.

obsides dare—to give hostages.

obsides civitatibus imperare—to compel communities to provide hostages.

pactionem facere cum aliquo (Sall. Iug. 40)—to conclude a treaty with some one.

ex pacto, ex foedere—according to treaty.

foedus facere (cum aliquo), icere, ferire—to conclude a treaty, an alliance.

foedus frangere, rumpere, violare—to violate a treaty, terms of alliance.

socium aliquem asciscere (B. G. 1. 5)—to make some one one's ally.

in amicitia populi Romani esse (Liv. 22. 37)—to be on friendly terms with the Roman people.

*a senatu amicus*¹ *appellatus est* (B. G. 1. 3)—he received from the senate the title of friend.

13. CONQUEST—SUBMISSION

terra potiri—to conquer a country.

terram suae dicionis facere

populum in potestatem suam reducere (B. G. 2. 34)

populum in deditionem venire cogere

} to reduce a country to subjection to oneself.

populum in deditionem accipere—to accept the submission of a people.

populum perdomare, subigere—to subjugate a nation.

populum, terram suo imperio, suae potestati subicere (not *sibi* by itself)—to make oneself master of a people, country.

¹ *amicus*, the friend of the Roman people, distinct from *socius*, an ally; a *socius* was always *amicus*, but not necessarily *vice versa*. The title *amicus populi Romani* was granted by the senate to foreign princes in recognition of some signal service.

<i>se imperio alicuius subicere</i> (not alicui)	} to make one's sub- mission to some one.
<i>in deditionem venire</i> (without <i>alicui</i>)	
<i>in alicuius potestatem se permittere</i>	} to be subject to some one, under someone's dominion.
<i>sub imperio et ditione alicuius esse</i>	
<i>subiectum esse, obnoxium esse im- perio or ditioni alicuius</i> (not simply <i>alicui</i>)	
<i>in potestate, in ditione alicuius esse</i>	

qui imperio subiecti sunt—subjects.

aliquem ad officium (cf. p. 172, note) *reducere* (Nep. Dat.

2. 3)—to reduce a people to their former obedience.

aliquem in officio continere—to keep some one in subjection.

in officio manere, permanere—to remain in subjection.

Asiam in provinciae formam (in provinciam) redigere (B. G. 1. 45)—to make Asia into a Roman province.

Asia populi Romani facta est—Asia was made subject to Rome.

gentem ad internecionem redigere or *adducere* (B. G. 2. 28)
—to completely annihilate a nation.

XVII. SHIPPING

I. NAVAL AFFAIRS IN GENERAL

navis actvaria—a cutter.

navis longa—a man-of-war.

navis oneraria—a transport or cargo-boat.

navis mercatoria—a merchantman.

oppidum maritimum—a seaport town.

- navibus plurimum posse
rebus maritimis multum valere* } to have a powerful navy.
- navem, classem aedificare, facere, efficere, instituere*—to build
a ship, a fleet.
- navem (classem) armare, ornare, instruere*—to equip a
boat, a fleet.
- navem deducere* (*vid.* p. 186, note)—to launch a boat.
- navem subducere* (*in aridum*)—to haul up a boat.
- navem reficere*—to repair a boat.
- navem conscendere, ascendere*—to embark.
- exercitum in naves imponere* (*Liv.* 22. 19)—to embark an
army.
- milites in terram, in terra exponere*—to disembark troops.
- classiarii*¹ (*B. C.* 3. 100)—marines.
- nautae, remiges*—sailors, rowers.
- vectores* (*Phil.* 7. 9. 27)—passengers.
- naves annotinae*—ships of last year.

2. VOYAGE—SHIPWRECK—LANDING

- solvere* (*B. G.* 4. 28)
navem (naves) solvere
ancoram (ancoras) tollere } to weigh anchor, sail.
- naves ex portu solvunt*—the ships sail from the harbour
- malacia et tranquillitas* (*B. G.* 3. 15)—a dead calm.
- vela in altum dare* (*Liv.* 25. 27)—to put to sea.
- ventum (tempestatem) nauti idoneum ex portu exeunt*—the
ships sail out on a fair wind.

¹ Also *classici milites, classica legio* (*Liv.* 21. 41; 22. 19). The marines were recruited from the lowest classes (*capite censi*) and from the *liberti*. The rowers were slaves; the ordinary sailors were *socii navales*.

vela facere, pandere } to set the sails.
vela dare }

vela contrahere (also metaph.)—to furl the sails.

oram legere (Liv. 21. 51)—to hug the coast.

superare insulam, promunturium—to double an island, cape.

ventis reflantibus (Tusc. 1. 49)—with the wind against one.

cursum dirigere aliquo—to set one's course for a place.

cursum tenere (opp. *commutare* and *deferri*)—to hold on one's course.

cursum conficere (Att. 5. 12. 1)—to finish one's voyage.

gubernaculum tractare } to steer.
clavum tenere }

navem remis agere or *propellere*—to row.

remis contendere } to row hard.
navem remis concitare, incitare }

sustinere, inhibere remos (De Or. 1. 33)—to stop rowing ; to easy.

navem retro inhibere (Att. 13. 21)—to back water.

naufragium facere—to be shipwrecked.

navis ad scopulos alliditur (B. C. 3. 27)—the ship strikes on the rocks.

vento se dare—to run before the wind.

in litus eici (B. G. 5. 10)—to be stranded.

deferri, deici aliquo } to be driven out of one's course ; to
tempestate abripi } drift.

procella (*tempestas*) *aliquem ex alto ad ignotas terras (oras)*
defert—the storm drives some one on an unknown coast.

naufragium colligere (Sest. 6. 15)—to collect the wreckage.

appellere navem (*ad terram, litus*)—to land (of people).

appelli (*ad oram*) (Att. 13. 21)—to land (of ships).

ancoras iacere—to drop anchor.

ancoras tollere—to weigh anchor.

naves ad ancoras deligare (B. G. 4. 29)

naves (classem) constituere (in alto) } to make fast boats to anchors.

ad ancoram consistere

ad ancoras deligari

in ancoris esse, stare, consistere

exire ex, de navi

egredi (ex) navi

exire, egredi in terram

escensionem facere (of troops)

portu, terra prohiberi (B. C. 3. 15)—to be unable to land.

litora ac portus custodia clausos tenere—to keep the coast and harbours in a state of blockade.

deperire—to founder, go down.

aestu incitato—at high tide.

3. A NAVAL BATTLE

navis praetoria (Liv. 21. 49)—the admiral's ship; the flagship.

*pugnam navalem facere*¹—to fight a battle at sea.

navem expedire—to clear for action.

navem rostro percutere—to charge, ram a boat.

navem expugnare—to board and capture a boat.

navem, classem deprimere, mergere—to sink a ship, a fleet.

classes concurrunt (Liv. 26. 39)—the fleets charge.

¹ For a description of a sea-fight *vid.* B. G. iii. 13-16.

- copulas, manus ferreas (in navem) } to throw grappling-*
inicere } irons on board ; to
in navem (hostium) transcendere } board.
navem capere, intercipere, deprehendere—to capture a boat.
vela armamentaue—sails and rigging.
ex eo navium concursu magnum incommodum est acceptum
—much damage was done by this collision.
navigia speculatoria—reconnoitring-vessels.

APPENDIX

ut ait Cicero (always in this order)—as Cicero says.

ut Ciceronis verbis utar—to use Cicero's expression ; to say with Cicero (not *ut cum Cicerone loquar*).

ut ita dicam—so to speak (used to modify a figurative expression).

ut non (nihil) dicam de . . .—not to mention . . .

ut plura non dicam—to say nothing further on . . .

ne dicam—not to say . . . (used in avoiding a stronger expression).

ne (quid) gravius dicam—to say the least . . .

ut breviter dicam—to put it briefly.

denique

ne multa, quid plura? sed quid

opus est plura?

ut paucis (rem) absolvam

ut paucis (brevis, breviter) com-

plectar

ut brevi comprehendam

ut brevi praevidam

ut eorum, quae dixi, summam faciam—to sum up . . .

ne longum sit

ne longus, multus sim

ne diutius vos demorer

} in short ; to be brief.

} not to be prolix.

ne in re nota et pervulgata multus sim—not to be diffuse
on such a well-known subject.

ut levissime dicam (opp. *ut gravissimo verbo utar*)—to use
the mildest expression.

ut planius dicam—to express myself more plainly.

ut verius dicam—to put it more exactly.

ut semel or *in perpetuum dicam*—to say once for all.

ut in eodem simili verser—to use the same simile, illustration.

ut hoc utar or *afferam*—to use this example.

dicam quod sentio—I will give you my true opinion.

tantum or *unum illud* or *hoc dico*—I will only say this
much . . .

non nego, non infitior—I do not deny.

<i>hoc dici potest de aliqua re</i>	} this can be said of . . . , applies to . . .
<i>hoc cadit in aliquid</i>	
<i>hoc transferri potest in aliquid</i>	

dixi quasi praeteriens or *in transitu*—I said *en passant*, by
the way.

sexcenties, millies dixi—I have said it a thousand times.

ut supra (opp. *infra*) *diximus, dictum est*—as I said
above.

dici vix (non) potest or *vix potest dici* (*vix* like *non* always
before *potest*)—I cannot find words for . . .

incredibile dictu est—it sounds incredible.

<i>supersedeo oratione</i> (not dicere)	} I avoid mentioning . . . ; I prefer not to touch upon . . .
<i>omitto dicere</i>	

haec habeo dicere or *habeo quae dicam*—this I have to say.

haec (fere) dixit—he spoke (very much) as follows.

haec in sententiam dixit—the tenor of his speech was
this . . .

mihi quaedam dicenda sunt de hac re—I have a few words to say on this.

quod vere praedicare possum—without wishing to boast, yet . . .

quod non arroganter dixerim—which I can say without offence, arrogance.

pace tua dixerim or *dicere liceat* } allow me to say . . .
bona (cum) venia tua dixerim }

non est huius loci c. Inf. } this is not the place to . . .
non est hic locus, ut . . . }

sed de hoc alias pluribus—more of this another time.

atque or *sed haec (quidem)* }
hactenus } so much for this subject . . . ;
atque haec quidem de . . . } enough has been said
ac (sed) de . . . satis dixi, } on . . .
dictum est }

haec (quidem) ille—this much he said.

haec Ciceronis fere—this is very much what Cicero said.

atque etiam hoc animadvertendum est—there is this also to notice.

ad reliqua pergamus, progrediamur—to pass on.

hic (ille) locus obscurus est—this passage is obscure.

hoc in medio relinquamus—let us leave that undecided.

sed labor longius—but that takes us too far.

non id ad vivum reseco (Lael. 5. 8)—I do not take that too strictly.

nonnulla praedicam—I wish to say a few words in preface.

ut omittam c. Accus. }
cum discessi, -eris, -eritis ab } putting aside, except.
praeter c. Accus. }

ut praetermittam c. Acc. c. Inf. } to except the fact
praeterquam quod or *nisi quod* } that . . .

- hoc in promptu est* } it is clear, evident.
hoc in aperto est }
hoc est luce (sole ipso) clarius—this is as clear as daylight.
hoc facile intellegi potest } that is self-evident, goes without
hoc per se intellegitur } saying.
hoc sua sponte appāret }
ex quo intellegitur or intellegi }
potest, debet } from this it appears, is
ex quo perspicuum est } apparent.
inde patet, appāret }
apparet et exstat } it is quite manifest.
exstat atque eminet }
si quaeris, si verum quaerimus—to put it exactly.
id quod maximum, gravissimum }
est } the main point.
quod caput est }
quod maius est—what is more important.
testis est, testatur, declarat }
documento, indicio est (without } this shows, proves . . .
demonstr. pron. but cui rei }
documento, indicio est) }
sed hoc nihil (sane) ad rem—but this is not to the point.
aliquid (τι) dicis (opp.) } there is something in what you
nihil dicis) } say; you are more or less
est istuc quidem aliquid } right.
audio, fateor—I admit it, say on.
ain tu?—do you think so? are you in earnest?
nonne?—is it not so?
quorsum haec (dicis)?—what do you mean?
male (opp. bene) narras (de)—I am sorry to hear . . .
monstra dicis, narras—it is incredible.
clarius loquere—speak up, please.

mihi crede (not *crede mihi*)—believe me.

per me licet—I have no objection.

rem acu tetigisti—you have hit the nail on the head.

ita prorsus existimo—that is exactly what I think.

ita res est—it is so.

res ita (aliter) se habet—the matter stands so (otherwise).

nec mirum, minime mirum (id quidem), quid mirum?—no wonder.

neque id mirum est or videri debet—there is nothing strange in that.

et recte (iure, merito)
et recte (iure) quidem } quite rightly.
recte, iure id quidem }

neque immerito (iniuria)
neque id immerito (iniuria) } and rightly too.

meo (tuo, suo) iure
iusto iure } with perfect right.

iustissime, rectissime
optimo iure (cf. *summo iure*) } legitimately; with the fullest right.
 p. 237).

macte virtute (esto or te esse iubeo)—good luck to you.

sed manum de tabula!—but enough!

INDEX

[The numbers refer to the pages. f. = "and following pages."]

ABALIENARE, 59
 abdere, 92, 142
 abdicare, 232
 abdicere, 189
 abducere, 76, 80, 182
 aberrare, 130
 abesse, 11, 21
 abhinc, 21
 abhorrere, 80, 161
 abicere arma, 267
 ad pedes, 28
 cogitationes, 77
 consilium, 84
 dolorem, 147
 memoriam, 88
 spem, 154
 timorem, 150
 abire, 16
 abolere, 90
 abominari, 182
 abrogare, 159
 abrupere, 195
 absolutus, 77, 114
 absolvere, 77, 202
 abstergere, 149
 abstinere, 168
 absumere, 5, 37
 abundantia, 55
 abuti, 73 (note)
 accelerare, 254
 accendere animum, 151
 accepimus (we know), 111
 accepti et expensi ratio, 204

accessus et recessus, 5
 accipere in bonam partem, 138
 accipere omen, 184
 hospitio, 192
 acclamare, 119 (note)
 acclivis, 3
 accuratus, 121 (note)
 accusatio, 241
 acerbitas, 133 (note)
 acies, 261
 oculorum, 27
 acquiescere, 92
 acroama, 117 (note)
 actio, 103, 117
 actor, 119
 actum agere, 71
 actum est de, 40, 153
 actus (act of a play), 117
 acu rem tangere, 281
 adamasse, 92, 156
 addere gradum, 15
 addicere alicui, 184
 adesse alicui, 54
 animo, 75, 152
 sacris, 178
 adiacere mari, 9
 aditus, 196
 admirabilia, 158
 admiratio, 158
 adulterini nummi, 202
 adumbrare, 77 (note), 125
 adventicius, 29
 adventus, 14

- adversae res, 50
 adversa fortuna, 50
 adverso flumine, 5
 advesperascit, 22
 advocatus, 241 (note)
 aedificare, 1, 208
 aedificator, 2, 208
 aegre ferre, 146, 162
 aegritudo, 148
 aegrotare, 36
 aequare solo, 259
 aequi iniqui, 63
 aer, 6, 31
 aes alienum, 207
 signatum, 202
 aestas, 22
 aestimare, 175
 aestiva castra, 255
 aestus, 5, 36
 aetas, 32
 aetas heroica, 112 (note)
 militaris, 246
 puerilis, 97
 recentior, 111
 affectio, 145
 afficere, 61 (note)
 affirmare, 83
 afflictæ res, 42, 50
 ager, 189, 208
 agere alias res, 75
 animam, 39
 causam, 222, 240
 cum populo, 216
 fabulam, 118
 iure, lege, 238
 partes, 119
 vigilias, 256
 vineas, 258
 agitare equum, 15
 agitur caput, 242
 vita, 53
 agmen, 254
 agrestis vita, 96
 agricultura, 208 *f.*
 ain tu? 280
 alienare, 59
 Alpes, 3
 altercari, 136
 alternis diebus, 23
 ambages, 122
 ambigua verba, 136
 ambitio, ambitus, 230
 ambitus verborum, 135
 ambulare, 197
 amicitia, 62
 amicus pop. rom., 271
 amor, 162
 amplecti, 26 (note)
 amputare errorem, 81
 anatocismus, 206
 ancora, 275
 angor, 150
 angustiae, 42
 anima, 31, 39
 animadversio censoria, 234
 animadvertere, 27 (note)
 animalia, 2
 animantia, 2
 animata, 2
 animus, 59 (note)
 annales, 112
 annona, 209
 annotare, 142
 annus, 21, 33
 ansa, 49
 antiquare, 217
 antiquitas generis, 214
 antiquitatem redolere, 124
 antiquitates, 19 (note)
 antiquitatis memoria, 112
 antiquius, 157
 aperire se, 179 (note)
 viam, 11
 apparare, 192
 apparatus belli, 251
 se applicare, 97, 101
 appropinquare, 17
 apud, coram, 122 (note)
 aqua, 4
 aquae ductio, 4 (note)
 aquatum ire, 257
 arae focique, 186
 arbitrium, 47
 arbores, 2, 209
 arcessitum dictum, 132
 ardere, 5
 ardere amore, 157
 cupiditate, 166

ardere odio, 162
 studio, 158
 argentum, 202
 argumentum, (proof) 106, (subject)
 117
 aries, 258
 arithmetica, 113 (note)
 arma, 311
 armare navem, 271
 armatura levis, 247
 ars, 114
 ars ludicra, 117
 dicendi, 120
 artes ingenuae, 91
 artus, 24
 aspergere infamiam, 69, 70
 sales, 132
 asperitas caeli, 6
 ex asse, 200
 assidere, 37
 assiduus, 194
 assuescere, 200
 astra, 7
 astrologus, 113 (note)
 atrium, 186 (note)
 attendere, 75
 auctorem esse, 85
 auctores consilii publici, 213
 auctoritas, 64, 100
 aucupari, 58
 aucupium verborum, 140
 audire bene, 68
 audientes, 143 (note)
 audientia, 123, 195
 auditione acceperis, 66
 augurari, 79
 augurium, 184
 aura, 219
 auris, 24
 auspicari, 184
 auspiciu, 184
 australis, 9 (note)
 autumnale tempus, 21
 auxilia, 247 (note)
 auxilium, 54
 aversus, 173
 axis, 7

BARBA, 25

beata vita, 50
 beatitas, 50 (note)
 belligerare, 248
 bellum, 246 *f.*
 bellum pro religionibus susceptum,
 179
 bene audire, 68
 latine, 94 (note)
 tibi, 190
 vertere, 62
 vivere, 191
 beneficium, 59
 benevolus, 57
 bibere, 190
 bibliotheca, 142
 biduo serius, 23
 bilem evomere, 163
 bis die, 23
 in bivio, 12
 blanditia, 74
 boni (cives), 222
 bonitas, 165
 cui bono? 56
 braccium, 26 (note)

CACHINNUS, 35
 cadaver, 41 (note)
 caelestia, 6, 113
 caelum, 6
 caerimoniae, 177
 calamitas, 51
 calcaria, 15, 97
 calculi, 204
 calida lavari, 4
 caligo, 75
 callum, 147 (note)
 calor, 8
 calumnia, 241
 candidatus, 230 *f.*
 canis, 210
 canticum, 119
 cantus, 116
 capacitas, 75 (note)
 capessere, 211
 capilli, 25
 capita conferre, 196
 capitalis, 162, 242
 captare, 35
 captio, 107

- captivus, 270 *f.*
 ut captus est, 75 (note)
 caput, 24 (note)
 carcer, 245
 cardo caeli, 7
 carere, 225
 caritas, 209
 carmen, 116
 carus, 156
 castigator, 176
 castra, 255
 casus, 20, 51
 catena, 245
 caterva, 119
 caupo, 201 (note)
 causa (cause), 44
 (interest), 212
 (process), 240
 (situation), 43
 cavere, 199, 238
 cedere de iure, 237
 fortuna, 52
 tempori, 18
 celare, 79
 celebritas, 120
 cena, 192
 censor, 234
 centesima usurae, 205
 cernere hereditatem, 119
 certiore facere, 67
 certo, certe, 83 (note)
 cervices, 25
 ceteris rebus, 46
 chorus, 119
 cibarius, 190
 cibus, 190
 cicatrices, 268
 cingulus, 7
 circuitus, 135
 circumferre oculos, 27
 circumfluere, 55
 circumfundere, 6, 17
 circumsedere, 258
 circumvenire, 264
 citare, 239
 citato equo, 15
 citeriora, 178
 civilis, 212 (note)
 civitas, 214 *f.*
 clades, 267 *f.*
 clamare, 129
 clamor, 129
 classarii, 273
 classicum, 257
 classis, 272
 claudere agmen, 253
 aures, 24
 fores, 186
 oppidum, 258
 claudicare, 129
 clavum tenere, 211, 274
 coagmentare, 105
 codex, 204
 coercere animum, 167
 milites, 250
 coetus, 194
 cogitatio, 77, 78
 cognitiones, 180
 cohors, 256
 colere agrum, 208
 aliquem, 70
 amicitiam, 62
 deum, 177
 fidem, 159
 litteras, 92
 virtutem, 164
 colligere animum, 150
 coniectura, 79
 ex aliqua re, 106
 gloriam, 68
 gratiam, 58
 invidiam, 161
 laudem, 65
 se, 37
 stipem, 55
 vasa, 257
 vires, 30
 collis, 3, 9
 collocare fiduciam, 159
 filiam, 198
 insidias, 169
 multitudinem, 189
 pecuniam, 203
 praesidium, 255
 sedem, 189
 studium, 70
 colloquium, 196 *f.*
 colonia, 229

- comicus, 115 (note)
 comitia, 217
 comineare, 14
 commeatus, 249
 commemorare, 99
 commendare, 68, 89
 commenta, 76, 79
 commentari, 121, 134
 commentarii, 142
 commenticius, 78
 commercium linguae, 133
 comminus, 264 *f.*
 (non) committere ut, 243
 commode dictum, 132
 commodum, 56
 communicare, 84 (note)
 commutare, 242 (note)
 commutationes, 21
 comoedia, 115
 comparare frumentum, 248
 gloriam, 67
 compensare, 57
 competitor, 231
 complecti animo, 76
 complere, 146 (note)
 complexus, 26 (note)
 compos, 75, 152
 composita verba, 139
 compositio verborum, 135
 comprobare, 106
 comptus, 25
 conatus, 86
 concedere, 108
 conciliare, 57, 64
 concilium, 216
 concinere, 109
 concipere animo, 76, 78
 ignem, 5
 scelus, 166
 vota, 182
 concitare equum, 15
 misericordiam, 155
 navem, 274
 odium, 162
 risum, 35
 seditionem, 223
 conclamare ad arma, 228
 ad libertatem, 228
 ignem, 6
 conclamare victoriam, 269
 concludere, 107
 conclusiuncula, 107
 concoquere, 189
 concubia nocte, 22
 concupiscere, 69,
 concurrere, 14, 260, 275
 concursus, 263
 condemnare, 217
 condere fructus, 209
 in sepulcro, 40
 leges, 219
 lustrum, 234
 poema, 115
 urbem, 184, 208
 condicio (match), 198
 conducere, 228, 247
 conducticius, 248
 conductum esse mercede, 61
 conferre capita, 196
 operam, 70
 pecuniam, 55
 signa, 253 (note), 263
 studium, 92
 confidere, 159
 conflagrare, 5
 conflare bellum, 252
 infamiam, 69, 70
 odium, 162
 periculum, 53
 conflictari, 36, 51 (note)
 confluere, 14
 confutare, 106
 congelinare, 105
 congressus, 194, 196
 coniector, 38
 coniectura, 79
 coniuratio, 223
 conivere, 27 (note)
 connexum esse, 105
 conqueri, 66
 conquiescere, 92
 conscendere equum, 14
 conscientia, 174
 consciscere, 39
 consensus mundi, 1
 omnium, 109
 consentire, 109
 consequentia, 107

- considerare, 85
 consignare, 140
 consilia et facta, 164
 consilium capere, 84
 consilium est ut, 87
 consilium publicum, 235
 consilium quo liber scriptus est,
 87 (note)
 consistere mente, 153
 consolari, 54
 conspirare, 223
 constantia (consistency), 104
 constare ex, 47
 mente, 152
 sibi, 110, 176
 constat, 83
 consternari, 15
 constructio verborum, 135
 consuetudo (habit), 200
 (relation), 194
 saeculi, 20
 sermonis, 133
 consul, 233
 consulatus, 234
 consulere famae, 68
 in aliquem, 244
 oraculum, 183
 rei publicae, 212
 saluti, 54
 valetudini, 36
 contaminare, 165
 contemplatio, 103
 contentus, 148
 contestari, 181
 contextus, 125
 continens, 2, 10
 contingere, 62
 continuare magistratum, 231
 continuatio, 105, 135
 continuus, 23
 contio, 122, 216 (note)
 contionari, 261
 contra dicere, 110
 contrariae partes, 16
 controversia, 108
 contumacia, 151
 contumelia, 168
 convalescere, 37
 convenientia et consensus, 1
 convertere ex graeca, 134
 in rem suam, 56
 iter, 254
 oculos, 27
 odium in se, 161
 se ad aliquem, 59 (note)
 signa, 253
 convivium, 192
 copia orationis, 125
 pugnandi, 260
 verborum, 136
 copiae, 247
 cor, 157 (note)
 coram, 122 (note), 196
 cordi esse, 157
 corrigere, 68 (note), 81, 96
 corroborata aetas, 32
 corrumpere tabulas, 242 (note)
 corrumpi, 74
 cotidianus sermo, 128, 133, 196
 cras, 23
 crassa Minerva, 97
 creare, 1 (note)
 creber sententiis, 125
 credere, 203
 creditor, 206
 cremare, 5, 41
 crimen, 242
 crinis, 25
 cruciari, 34, 147, 155
 crudelitas, 156
 crux, 245
 cubitum ire, 37
 cujas, 31
 culmen, 3
 culpa, 243
 cultus, 96, 177
 cumulus, 50, 146
 cunabula, 43 (note)
 cuneus, 265
 cuniculus, 259
 cupere, 58
 cura, 150
 curae esse, 157
 habere, 157
 curationes, 37
 currere, 120
 curriculum, 31 (note)
 curru vehi, 14

cursus (navis), 274
 (stellae), 7
 (vitae), 31
 custodia, 245

DAMNARE, 243

damnum, 57

dare ansas ad, 49

consilium, 85

copiam, 48

crimini, 66

dotem, 198

epistulam, 144

fabulam, 118

facultatem, 48

fenori, 203

fidem, 159

frenos, 15

in praeceps, 52

iusiurandum, 179

laudi, 65

locum, 48

ludos, 41

mandatum, 62

manus, 26

negotium, 62

nomen, 246

nuptum, 198

occasionem, 48

operam, 70

optionem, 82

oraculum, 183

palnam, 61

poenam, 244

responsum, 131, 183

salutem, 197

se ignaviae, 73

se in conspectum, 28

se in fugam, 266

se in viam, 12

se somno, 37

senatum, 235

signum, 260

spatium, 18

stipendium, 248

suspicionem, 160

tempus, 18

terga, 266

tesseractum, 256

dare testes, 239

vela, 274

veniam, 243

verba, 171

debere, 203, 206

debitor, 206

decedere, de iure, 237

de officio, 172

de potestate, 232

de provincia, 14 (note)

de scena, 118

de sententia, 78

loco, 14

vita, 14 (note), 39

decessus, 5

declamatio, 129 (note)

declarare, 233

declinare de via, 12

declivis, 3

decrecere, 6

decretum, 101

decurrere, 16

se dedere desidia, 73

libidinibus, 167

litteris, 92

victori, 259

vitiis, 165

deditio, 259

deducere a fera vita, 96

coloniam, 186 (note)

de capite, 24, 186 (note)

de domo, 186

de fide, 159

de sententia, 78, 186 (note)

naves, 186 (note)

deesse occasione, 48

officio, 48 (note), 172

defectio solis, 6

defendere, 168, 215

deferre honores, 232

imperium, 226

negotium, 62

palnam, 61

principatum, 216

regnum, 227

defervescere, 32, 163

defigere, 251 (note)

definitio, 104

defunctus, 216

- defungi calamitatibus, 51
 periculis, 53
 sua morte, 39 (note)
 degenerare, 165
 degere, 31, 55
 deicere de gradu, 152, 216
 de possessione, 187
 iugum, 228
 oculos, 27
 se, 16
 spe, 154
 delabi, 100
 delectari, 74, 146
 delenire, 74
 delere, 70, 89,
 deleri incendio, 5
 deliberare, 18, 85
 delicatus, 190
 deliciae, 157
 deligare, 245, 275
 demere, 81, 160
 deminutio capitis, 25 (note)
 demoliri, 185
 demorari, 277
 denegare, 62
 denique, 277
 denuntiare, 170
 depellere de gradu, 152, 216
 de sententia, 78
 dolorem, 147
 famem, 34
 depellere vim vi, 169
 depingere, 76, 126
 deponere consilium, 84
 dolorem, 147
 errorem, 81
 inimicitias, 63
 librum, 142 (note)
 luctum, 149
 magistratum, 232
 memoriam, 88
 spem, 154
 vestem, 189 (note)
 depravari, 165
 deprecari, 245
 deprehendere, 144, 239
 deprimere, 275
 deridere, 171
 derivare, 4, 137 (note)
- derogare, 206, 218
 descendere, 15, 54 (note), 177, 260
 desciscere, 80, 165
 describere, 113
 descriptio civitatis, 210
 juris, 238
 temporum, 22
 terrae, 112
 vitae, 31
 deserere agros, 208
 honestatem, 165
 officium, 172
 proelium, 262
 deserta loca, 3
 desiderium, 157
 desidia, 73
 desipere, 146
 desperare, 153 (note)
 desperatio, 153
 despicere, 6 (note), 42
 despondere, 198
 destringere, 251
 desudare, 71, 98
 deterreri, 78, 84
 detrahere, 68
 detrectare, 246, 260
 detrimentum, 57
 deturbare animum, 152
 deus, 177 *f.*
 deverti, 193
 devincire, 59, 166
 dextra, 197
 dialectica, 102
 dicendi ars, 120
 dicere causam,
 contra aliquem, 110
 dictatorem, 233
 diem, 237
 falsa, 171
 in aurem, 24
 sacramentum, 246
 sententiam, 79
 dicio, 271
 dictator, 233
 dictum, 132
 dies, 22
 differre diem, 87
 ignem, 6
 in tempus, 18

- difficultas, 42, 133 (note)
 diffluere, 4, 74
 diffundere, 2, 17
 diffusus, 81, 105
 digerere, 180, 140
 digitus, 25
 dignitas, 64
 digressio, 128
 diiudicare, 80, 108
 dilatare, 261
 dilectus (subst.), 246
 diligens, 80, 113, 133
 diluculum, 22
 dimicare, 262 *f.*
 dimittere concilium, 217
 e manibus, 26, 49, 267
 exercitum, 247
 hostes, 267
 impunitum, 245
 occasionem, 48
 senatum, 236
 in directum, 16
 dirigere, 12, 175
 dirimere, 108, 236
 diripere, 259
 discedere a latere, 25
 a lege, 218
 a sententia, 78
 a signis, 254
 a virtute, 165
 ab armis, 250
 ab officio, 172
 e loco, 13
 ex animo, 89
 in diversas partes, 16
 in duas partes, 221
 in sententiam, 236
 victum, 267
 vita, 39
 discessio, 236
 discordia, 223
 discrepare, 109
 disertus, 121
 disiungere, 11
 displicere sibi, 132
 disponere eleganter, 103
 equites, 261
 praesidia, 255
 dispositio, 130
 disputare, 107
 disputatio, 107
 dissentire, 109, 221
 disserere, 102, 108
 dissidere, 109, 162
 dissimulare, 170 (note)
 dissimulatio, 170
 dissipare, 192
 dissolvere acta, 219
 aes alienum, 207
 amicitiam, 63
 argentariam, 204
 crimina, 242
 nomina, 207
 pontem, 208
 dissuere, 63
 distare, 11
 distentum esse, 72
 distineri et divelli, 147
 diurnus, 13
 diurnitas, 23, 149
 diverbium, 119
 diversus, 16
 dives, 125 (note)
 dividere, 10, 104
 divinitus, 178
 divitiae, 55
 sub divo, 6
 divortium, 199
 divulgari, 67
 docti, 94
 doctrina, 94, 102
 documentum, 280
 ex dodrante, 200
 dolere, 146
 dolor, 146
 dolus, 171
 domesticas, 112
 domicilium, 188
 dominatio, 221, 226 (note)
 dominatus unius, 221
 domus, 186
 donum, 239
 dormire, 37
 dos, 198
 sine dubio, 82
 dubitatio, 82
 ducere aliquo, 12
 animam, 31

- ducere argumentum, 106
 bellum, 252
 familiam, 120 (note)
 fossam, 256
 funus, 40
 infra se, 65
 initium, 43
 laudi, 65
 nomen, 137
 originem, 31
 spiritum, 31
 tempus, 18
 uxorem, 198
 ductus aquae, 4
 dupliciter dici, 138

 EDAX, 189
 edere animam, 39
 exemplum, 100
 fabulam, 118
 librum, 140
 in lucem, 30
 munus gladiatorium, 120
 oraculum, 183
 risum, 35
 spiritum, 39
 testes, 239
 in vulgus, 66
 edicere, 235, 239
 ediscere, 88 (note)
 edita loca, 3
 educari, 96
 educere exercitum, 260
 gladium, 251
 efferre fruges, 2
 laudibus, 65
 se insolentius, 151
 signa, 253 (note)
 efferri fortuna, 50
 funere, 40
 gaudio, 146
 iracundia, 163
 efficere legiones, 247
 efflorescere, 45
 effluere, 89
 effrenatus, 167
 effugere, 26 (note)
 effundere dolorem, 147
 iram, 163
 effundere lacrimas, 35
 sanguinem, 40
 effusa fuga, 146 (note), 266
 laetitia, 146
 effusae habenae, 15
 effusi imbres, 7
 sumptus, 146, 191
 egestas, 55
 egressio, 128
 eicere e civitate, 225
 e senatu, 234
 histrionem, 119
 in exilium, 225
 in litus, 274
 sententiam, 102
 elaborare, 71
 elatio orationis, 124
 elegantia, 102, 124
 elementa, 1, 97
 elidere, 72 (note)
 eligere, 99,
 elogium, 41
 eloquens, 121
 eluere, 70
 eluvio, 4 (note)
 emendate scribere, 135
 emere, 201
 emergere, 4
 emetiri, 12
 emigrare, 189
 eminus, 251
 emissio telorum, 262 (note)
 eniti, 72
 enodare, 137
 enuntiatio, 135
 epicus, 113 (note)
 epistula, 144
 epulae, 192
 equestri loco natus, 214
 equus, 14
 erigere ad spem, 154
 animum, 151
 aures, 24
 turrin, 208
 eripere dolorem, 148
 e periculo, 53
 errorem, 81
 libertatem, 227
 potestatem, 48

eripere spem, 154
 erogare, 202, 218
 errantes stellae, 7
 error, 81
 errores Ulixis, 12
 eructare, 8
 erudire, 96
 eruditus, 93
 erumpere, 35 (note)
 eruptio, 8,
 escendere, 122
 esse (live), 32
 esurire, 34
 eventus, 44
 evertere bonis, 188
 oppidum, 259
 rationem, 104
 rem publicam, 224
 evincere, 106
 evocare copias, 247
 evocati, 247 (note)
 evomere, 8, 163
 exacta aetas, 33
 exactio, 242 (note)
 exaggerata oratio, 124
 exalbescere, 149
 exanclare, 50
 exanimari, 31, 140
 excedere dicimum annum, 33
 ex pueris, 32
 finibus, 10
 modum, 174
 vita, 39
 excepti et expensi tabula, 204
 excerpere, 142
 excidere oppidum, 259
 excipere hospitio, 193
 impetum, 262
 vulnus, 268
 excitare a mortuis, 177
 ad spem, 154
 ad virtutem, 165, 261
 admirationem, 158
 animum, 151
 bellum, 252
 clamores, 118
 e somno, 38
 ignem, 5
 libidinem, 167

excitare motus, 145
 odium, 162
 turrim, 208
 excolere, 95
 excruciiari, 174
 excubare, 256
 excultus, 95
 excurrere, 10, 13
 excursio, 256, 258
 excusare, 37
 excutere iugum, 228
 risum, 35
 exedere, 51 (note)
 exemplum, 99, 143
 exercere artem, 114
 crudelitatem, 156
 imperium, 187
 inimicitias, 63
 iudicium, 51 (note)
 metalla, 51 (note)
 navem, 51 (note)
 vectigalia, 51
 exercitatus in armis, 248
 in dicendo, 121
 in re publica, 213
 exercitus, 247 *f.*
 exhaurire, 40
 exheredari, 199
 exigere fabulam, 118
 nomina, 207
 pecuniam, 203
 existimatio, 68, 69 (note), 220
 existimator, 114
 exitium, 52
 exitus, 39, 44
 expedire arma, 250
 navem, 275
 negotium, 72
 salutem, 54
 expedita oratio, 124
 expeditus ad, 121, 123
 expellere ex urbe, 225
 regno, 227
 expendere poenas, 244
 experientia, 90 (note)
 experiri, 90
 expetere poenas, 163
 expiare manes, 182
 scelus, 166

- expiari, 244 (note)
 explere animum, 163
 cupiditates, 167
 famem, 34
 odium, 162
 expleta forma, 78
 explicare aciem, 261
 frontem, 25
 scholas, 102
 sententias, 125
 volumen, 140
 explodere, 119
 explorare, 254
 explorata victoria, 269
 exploratum habere, 83
 explosae sententiae, 102
 expolitus, 95
 exponere merces, 202
 praemium, 61
 vitam, 126
 exportare, 202
 exposcere signum, 260
 expostulare, 66
 exprimere, 77 (note)
 exprimere ad verum, 115
 litteras, 140
 verbis, 125
 verbum e verbo, 134
 exprobrare, 66
 expugnare, 259
 exsanguis oratio, 124
 exsequiae, 40
 exsequi consilium, 86
 funus, 40
 negotium, 72, 201
 officium, 171
 exsibilare, 118
 exsilium, 225
 exsolvere, 207
 expectatio, 98, 155
 extinguere bellum, 50 (note)
 motus, 145
 odium, 162
 extirpare humanitatem, 156
 perturbationes, 167
 vitia, 166
 extruere aedificium, 208
 mensas, 192
 vallum, 256
 exsulare, 225
 exsultare, 146
 exsurgere, 124
 extendere fines, 10
 extenuare, 128
 exterminare, 225
 extollere in maius, 128
 laudibus, 65
 extorquere, 26, 81
 extrahere bellum, 252
 errorem, 81
 religionem, 179
 exturbare, 188
 exuere armis, 257
 humanitatem, 156
 servitutem, 228
 vestem, 189
 FABRICATOR mundi, 1
 fabula, 112, 118
 fabulam fieri, 67
 fabularis historia, 112
 fabulator, 115
 facere aes alienum, 207
 amicitiam, 62
 argentariam, 204
 audientiam, 123, 196
 bellum, 252 *f.*
 certiorem, 67
 coniecturam, 79
 contra rem publicam, 223
 copiam, 48
 cum aliquo, 221
 cuneum, 265
 detrimentum, 57
 discessionem, 236
 divitem, 55
 eruptionem, 258
 excursionem, 258
 expectationem, 155
 facinus, 166
 fidem, 160
 foedus, 271
 fugam, 266
 funus, 40
 gratum, 58
 heredem, 199
 hospitium, 193
 iacturam, 57 (note)

- facere ignem, 5
 indutias, 270
 initium, 43
 insidias, 169
 irruptionem, 259
 iter, 12
 iussa, 62
 iusta, 40
 lectisternium, 183
 leges, 219
 ludos, 119
 mentionem, 67
 mercaturam, 201
 messem, 209
 modos, 117
 moram, 87
 naufragium, 274
 navem, 273
 officium, 171
 opera, 258
 opus, 71
 orbem, 265
 pactionem, 271
 periculum, 53
 periurium, 180
 poema, 115
 potestatem pugnandi, 48 (note),
 260
 potestatem sui, 48, 196
 proelium, 261
 quaestum, 202
 sacra, 182
 scelus, 166
 sementem, 209
 spem, 153
 sponsonem, 160
 stipendia, 248
 stragem, 268
 suae dicionis, 271
 summam, 205
 sumptum, 191
 testamentum, 199
 turrim, 208
 vallum, 256
 verba, 122, 136
 verbum nullum, 138
 versuram, 203
 versus, 115
 viam, 11
- facere vim, 169
 vota, 182
 facessere, 73
 facete dicere, 132
 facilitas, 193
 facinus, 166
 facta et consilia, 164
 factio, 220
 factum sui iuris, 32
 faex populi, 215
 fallacia, 171
 fallere, 81, 160
 spem, 154
 falsae tabulae, 242
 fama, 66
 fames, 34
 familia (histrionum), 118, 120
 (schola), 102
 familiaris homo, 63
 res, 187
 sermo, 133
 familiaritas, 63, 194
 fas, 238
 fasces praeferre, 234
 fasti 22
 favere, 58, 219
 favor, 58, 219
 febris, 36
 felicitas, 50
 fenerari, 203
 fenori dare, 203
 fenus, 206
 fera, 264
 ferire foedus, 271
 frontem, 25
 hostias, 182
 securi, 245
 ferre arma, 246
 auxilium, 54
 centuriam, 231
 condiciones, 270
 et agere, 257
 expensum, 204
 fruges, 2
 in maius, 128
 in oculis, 28
 legem, 211
 opem, 54
 personam, 119

- ferre poenam, 244
 prae se, 94, 170
 repulsam, 231
 salutem, 54
 signa, 253
 suffragium, 217
 victoriam, 269
 ferri impetu caeco, 176
 instinctu, 116
 libidine, 167
 ferro ignique, 257
 fessus, 12
 fides, 159, 206
 fides rerum, 112
 fidibus discere, 116
 fiducia, 159
 figere oculos, 27
 filia, 198
 fines, 10
 fingere animo, 77
 verba, 137
 vultum, 29
 fingendi ars, 117
 finis, 40, 43
 finitimum esse, 10
 firmare, 256
 firmata aetas, 32
 ut fit, 201
 flagitium, 166 (note)
 flagrare bello, 252
 cupiditate, 166
 desiderio, 157
 incendio, 5
 invidia, 161
 flamma, 5
 flare, 8
 flectere animum, 145
 equum, 15
 iter, 254
 fletus, 35
 florere aetate, 32
 antiquitate, 214
 arte dicendi, 121
 auctoritate, 64
 gratia, 58
 laude, 67
 opibus, 55
 flores dicendi, 125
 flos, 32, 209
 flosculi, 136
 fluctuari, 4
 fluctus, 4
 fluens oratio, 124
 flumen, 4
 pro aris et focis, 186
 foedus, 270 *f.*
 fons, 25 (note), 45
 forensis lux, 98 (note)
 fores, 186
 foris, 186
 forma, 78, 113
 forma rei publicae, 210
 formare verba, 137
 formidines, 181
 fortis, 264
 fortuna, 51
 fortunae, 55, 188
 forum fugere, 212
 fossa, 256
 fragor, 8
 frangere animum, 151
 cervices, 25
 fidem, 160
 pacem, 270
 fraus, 57 (note)
 freni, 15
 frequentare domum, 185
 scholam, 97
 triumphum, 269
 frigere, 85, 92 (note)
 frigus, 8
 frondescere, 2
 frons, 25
 fructus, 56, 209
 fruges, 2
 frugi esse, 187 (note)
 frumentum, 209, 249
 sine fuco, 171
 fuga, 266
 fugare, 266
 fugere, 267
 me fugit, 82
 fulmen, 8
 fundamentum, 208
 fundere et fugare, 266
 fundere fruges, 2
 versus, 115
 fundi (property), 188

funebris oratio, 41
 fungi munere, 232
 suo officio, 171
 supremo officio, 40
 funus, 40
 furiae, 174
 furor, 164
 in futurum, 20

 GALEA, 250
 gaudium, 146
 gemma, 2
 generare, 2, 31
 genere Gallus, 31
 genus dicendi, 123
 vitae, 98
 (genus), 104
 geographia, 113
 geometria, 113
 gestare in manibus, 26
 sinu, 157
 gestire, 146
 gestum agere, 129
 gignere, 2
 gladiatorium munus, 120
 gladius, 251
 glarea, 11
 gloria, 67
 gradus, 15
 graece loqui, 134
 grammaticus, 135
 grammatista, 135 (note)
 granditas, 124
 grates, 60, 181
 gratia, 59, 219
 gratus, 59, 219
 gratulari, 197
 gratus, 60
 grave caelum, 6
 grex, 118, 210
 gubernacula rei publicae, 211
 gubernaculum, 274
 gurgis, 4
 gustare, 93
 gymnici ludi, 120

 HABENAE, 15
 habitare, 188
 habitus animi, 145

hactenus, 279
 haerere, 129
 equo, 15
 in animo, 89, 100
 in complexu, 26 (note)
 in tergis, 267
 haesitare, 129
 hasta, 251
 haurire calamitatem, 50
 e fontibus, 45
 luctum, 149
 voluptates, 74
 haustus, 34
 hebescere, 73
 hebetes sensus, 29
 herbae, 2
 in herbis esse, 209
 hereditas, 199
 heroicus, herous, 112 (note)
 hesternus dies, 23
 hiberna, 255
 hiems, 22
 historia, 111
 historicus, 111 (note)
 histrio, 19
 hodie, 23
 homines huius aetatis, 34
 honestas, 165
 honor, 215
 hora, 23
 horrere, 25
 hortus, 4
 hospitium, 192
 hostia, 182
 huc et illuc, 16
 humanae res, 42
 humanitas, 96, 156
 humi, 17
 humiles res, 77

 ICERE foedus, 271
 ici fulmine, 8
 idiota, 114 (note)
 idoneus locus, 256
 ventus, 273
 ignarus, 83
 ignavia, 73
 ignis, 5
 ignominia, 70

- illata vis, 116
 illecebrae, 74
 illudere, 64, 171
 illustris, 214
 imago, 7
 imbecillitas, 75
 imber, 7
 imbuere, 103 (note)
 imitari, 100
 imitatio, 115
 imminere, 170 (note)
 imminuere auctoritatem, 64
 famam, 68
 fidem, 159
 gratiam, 220
 immodestia, 250
 immolare, 182
 immortalitas, 68, 106
 immunitas, 239
 immutatio, 139
 impeditus, 13
 impendere, 25 (note), 170 (note)
 imperare, 246
 imperator, 231
 imperitus, 91
 imperium, 250
 impertire civitatem, 214
 laudem, 65
 salutem, 197
 impetrare, 62, 86
 impetus, 262
 impietas, 180
 implacabilis, 162
 imponere in navem, 273
 importari, 202
 impotens dominatio, 227
 impotens sui, 167
 imprudens, 255
 impunitus, 245
 impurus, 124 (note)
 inanima, 2
 incendere, 5
 incendium, 5
 inceptum, 86
 incertus, 86
 incidere in aes alienum, 207
 in aetatem, 34
 in aliquem, 14
 in manus, 26
 incidere in mentionem, 67
 in morbum, 36
 in sermonem, 195
 in vituperationem, 66
 incidere in aes, 218
 linum, 144
 nervos, 72
 incipere, 43
 incitare, 166
 incitatio mentis, 158
 inclinare, 235
 includere, 128
 incognitus, 239
 incolere, 188 (note)
 incommodum, 57
 inconditus, 116, 123
 inconstantia, 109
 incorruptus, 29
 increbrescere, 66, 263 (note)
 inculta loca, 3
 incumbere, 70, 212
 incunabula, 43
 incursio, 262 (note)
 incutere, 149, 179
 indagare, 137
 index, 141
 indicare (se), 79 (note)
 indicio est, 280
 indicta causa, 241
 indignatio, 164
 indignitas, 162
 indoles, 98, 176
 inducere animum, 86
 in mores, 200
 in scenam, 118
 in spem, 154
 verbum, 137
 induere galeam, 250
 personam, 119
 vestem, 189
 industria, 70, 87
 indutiae, 270 f.
 inedia, 34
 ineleganter, 103
 ineptiae, 76
 ineptus, 133
 inerrantes stellae, 7
 inexorabilis, 59 (note)
 inexplabilis, 179

- infamia, 69
 infaustus, 184
 inferi, 177
 inferre bellum, 253
 calamitatem, 51
 damnum, 57
 gradum, 262
 ignem, 258
 infamiam, 69
 iniuriam, 168
 signa, 253 (note)
 vim, 169
 inferum mare, 5 (note)
 infinitus, 99
 infirmare, 159
 infirmitas, 75
 infitiri, 278
 infixus, 100, 147
 inflare, 117
 inflammare animos, 123
 cupiditate, 69
 odium, 162
 urbem, 5
 inflammatio, 158
 inflatus, 116, 151
 informare, 77, 96
 ingenium, 75
 ingerere, 258
 ingratus, 59
 ingravescere, 32, 37 (note), 209
 inhaerere, 161
 inhibere naveni, 274
 inhumatus, 41
 inicere manus, 26
 mentionem, 67
 pontem, 208
 spem, 153
 timorem, 149
 inimicitia, 63
 iniquitas, 42, 51
 inire consilium, 84
 gratiam, 58, 220
 magistratum, 232
 rationem, 204
 societatem, 193
 viam, 12
 initiari, 178
 initium, 43
 iniungere, 227
 iniuria, 52, 168
 innatus, 77, 180
 inopia, 55, 136
 inops, 85
 inquinata oratio, 124
 vita, 166
 inquisitio, 80
 inscribere librum, 141
 sepulcro, 41
 statuas, 117
 inscriptio, 141
 insculptus, 180
 insequente anno, 21
 insequi hostes, 267
 inserere, 128
 insidiae, 169
 insinuare se, 194
 insistere, 16
 insitus, 77, 180
 insolentia, 151
 inspicere libros, 184
 instaurare, 120
 instinctus, 116
 institor, 201 (note)
 instituere religiones, 179
 sermonem, 195
 institui, 96
 instituta ac leges, 210
 institutio, 97
 ex instituto, 201
 institutum, 176
 instructa domus, 185
 instruere aciem, 261
 convivium, 192
 insidias, 169
 navem, 273
 insula, 274
 insusurrare, 24
 integer, 47 (note)
 integritas orationis, 124
 sermonis, 134
 intellegens, 114
 intellegentia, 75
 intellegere, 68
 intemperans, 167
 intempesta nox, 22
 intentus, 73
 intercalaris, 22
 intercessio, 234

- interciperē, 144,
 intercludere, 249
 interdicere, 225
 interesse consiliis, 85
 proelio, 262
 rebus divinis, 177
 scholis, 102
 interficere, 39
 interimere, 39 (note)
 interiora Asiae, 2
 interire, 34
 interitus, 52
 intermittere iter, 12
 laborem, 71
 proelium, 262
 tempus, 18, 20
 internecio, 268
 internum mare, 5
 interpellare, 129
 interpolare, 142
 interponere causam, 44
 fidem, 160
 moram, 87
 se bello, 252
 interpretari, 38, 135
 interpretatio nominum, 137
 interregnum, 224
 interrogare, 131
 interserere, 44
 intervallum, 11, 20
 intestinus, 252
 intimus, 63
 intrare, 14
 introire, 14
 intueri, 28
 inundare, 4
 inurere, 70, 147
 inutilis, 57
 inventum, 101
 investigari, 80
 investigatio, 80, 113
 inveterascere, 200
 inveteratus, 79, 162
 invidia, 191, 220
 invitare, 192
 invitus, 97
 ira, 163
 iracundia, 163
 ire, 13
 irridere, 171
 irrigare, 4
 irrogare, 218 (note), 245
 irrumpere, 259
 iter, 11, 12
 iterum, 20
 itinere (in), 13 (note)
 itineribus magnis, 254
 IACENT litterae, 92
 iacere ad pedes, 28
 graviter, 36
 in luctu, 148
 in malis, 51
 in oblivione, 90
 iacere ancoras, 275
 fundamenta, 208
 minas, 170
 tela, 251
 voces, 136
 iacet pecunia, 203
 philosophia, 101
 iactare, 170
 iactari casibus, 51
 febri, 36
 fluctibus, 4
 (nummus), 203
 iactatio, 223
 iactura, 57 (note)
 ianua, 186
 ieiuna oratio, 124
 ieiunium, 190
 iocare, 132
 iocus, 132
 iubere, 216
 iucunditas, 132
 iudex, 238
 iudicare, 243
 iudicium, 237
 iugis aqua, 4
 iungere amicitiam, 51 (note), 62 *f.*
 copias, 247
 dextram, 197
 fluvium, 208
 iurare, 179
 iure, 281
 iuris consulti, 238
 ius, 237 *f.*
 ius gentium, 270

ius vitae, 233
 iusiurandum, 179
 iussa, 62
 iusta facere, 40
 iustis de causis, 44
 iustitium, 238
 iustum bellum, 252
 iuvantibus dis, 181
 iuventus, 246

KALENDAE, 144

LABEFACTARE, 50 (note), 179

labor, 71
 laborare fame, 34
 inopia, 55
 pecunia, 207
 pedibus, 37
 labrum, 93
 lacerare, 192
 lacerti, 123
 lacrima, 35*f.*
 lacteus orbis, 7
 laedere, 159
 laetitia, 146
 languor, 73
 lassitudo, 38
 latine doctus, 94
 loqui, 134
 scire, 134
 scribere, 135
 latinitas, 134 (note)
 latinus, 94 (note), 134
 latitudo, 10
 latus (lungs), 123 (note)
 laudare, 65
 laudatio, 41 (note)
 laus, 64
 lavari, 4
 laxare, 209
 lectisternium, 183
 lector, 143 (note)
 lectus, 36, 38
 legare, 199
 legentes, 143
 legere, 142, 235
 leges dicendi, 135
 legio, 260*f.*
 legis lator, 219

legitimus, 231
 lenis vox, 129
 leo, 264 (note)
 lepos, 132
 lepus, 264 (note)
 levitas animi, 177
 lex, 210, 217
 liber populus, 211
 liber (book), 140
 libera republica, 19
 liberaliter, 96
 liberare obsidione, 259
 libere dicere, 122
 liberi, 30
 libertas, 228
 libido, 167
 libri Sibyllini, 184
 lictores, 233
 limare, 142
 lingua, 123, 133
 lis, 241
 littera, 97 (note), 140
 litterae, 91, 97, 140, 144, 172
 litterator, 135 (note)
 litteratus, 93
 loca, 3, 255
 locare aedes, 234
 castra, 255
 insidias, 169
 opus, 208
 vectigalia, 229
 loci argumentorum, 106
 locus (motive), 48 .
 (rank), 214
 (situation), 9, 11
 locutio, 136
 longa navis, 272
 longe lateque, 16, 81
 longinquus, 11
 longitudo, 10
 longus, 277
 luce clarius, 280
 lucere, 22
 lucrum, 206
 luctus, 149
 lucubrare, 71
 luculentus, 99
 ludere aliquem, 171
 ludi circenses, 119

- ludi funebres, 41
 ludibrium, 171
 ludicra ars, 117
 ludus discendi, 97
 luere, 244
 lumina dicendi, 125
 litterarum, 93
 (oculi), 28
 luminibus obstruere, 208
 officere, 208
 luna, 6
 lustrare, 247
 lustrum, 234
 lux, 22
 luxuria, 191
- MACHINARI, 52
 mactare, 182
 macte, 281
 macula, 70
 magister, 96
 magistratus, 230 *f.*
 magniloquentia, 124
 maiestas, 242
 male audire, 68
 maleficium, 60
 malum, 51
 manare, 29, 45
 mandare animo, 101
 litteris, 140
 memoriae, 88
 mandatum, 62
 manere, 78, 172
 manes, 182
 manum de tabula, 281
 manus, 26, 142
 mare medium, 5 (note)
 nostrum, 5 (note)
 maritimus, 5, 272
 Mars, 263
 materia, 130
 mathematica, 113
 matrimonium, 198
 maturare, 17,
 matutinus, 23
 mederi, 57
 medicina, 54, 98
 mediocritas, 175
 e medio tollere, 40
- meditata oratio, 121
 mediterranea terra, 2
 medium esse, 221
 memoria, 88
 mendacium, 115 (note), 171
 mendicitas, 55
 mendum, 143
 mens, 76, 87
 mensa, 192
 mentio, 67
 mentis compos, 152
 mercator, 143 (note), 201 (note)
 mercatoria navis, 272
 mercatura, 201
 merces, 202
 merere, 248
 mereri, 60
 mergere, 275
 meridianus, 23
 meridies, 9
 merito, 281
 meritum, 60
 messis, 209
 metalla, 229
 metari, 256
 metere, 209
 metiri, 175
 metus, 149
 micare, 8
 migrare, 39
 miles, 246 *f.*
 militia, 247
 Minerva, 97
 ministrare, 190
 minitari, 170
 miscere, 224
 misericordia, 155
 mitigare, 23
 mittere colonos, 229
 consultum, 183
 foras, 186
 librum, 141
 tela, 251
 vocem, 129
 mobilis animus, 177
 moderari, 15,
 moderatio, 175
 modestia, 250
 modi, 117

modus, 174
 moenia, 258
 moleste ferre, 146
 molestia, 133 (note)
 momentum, 20 (note), 46
 mons, 3
 monstra, 76, 79
 monstrare, 12
 montuosa regio, 3
 monumentum, 89, 93
 mora, 87
 mōratus, 175
 morbus, 36
 morderi, 174
 mordicus, 27
 morem gerere, 58
 mores, 96, 175
 mori, 39
 his moribus, 20
 nil moror, 236 (note)
 mors, 39
 morsus doloris, 147
 mortuus, 41
 mos, 200
 motus animi, 145
 stellarum, 7
 moventes res, 188 (note)
 movere admirationem, 158
 bellum, 252 *f.*
 bilem, 163 *f.*
 castra, 253
 de sententia, 78
 lacrimas, 36
 loco, 16
 risum, 35
 sensus, 29
 suspicionem, 160
 tribu, 234
 ne multa, 277
 multa nox, 22, 195
 multare, 245
 multum esse, 97, 127
 mundanus civis, 222
 mundus, 1
 munire castra, 256
 viam, 11
 munitiones, 259
 murus, 16
 musica, 116

mutare consilium, 84
 vestem, 189
 vultum, 29
 mutua accusatio, 242
 mutuari, 203 *f.*

NARRARE, 128
 narratio, 195 *f.*
 natio, 31
 natura adversante, 97
 caeli, 6
 et mores, 176
 loci, 9, 254, 257
 rerum, 1
 naturalis, 102
 natus, 31
 naufragium, 274
 nauta, 273
 navalis pugna, 275 *f.*
 navis, 272
 necare, 34, 39
 necessitudo, 194
 nefas, 166 (note)
 negare, 62
 neglegere, 168, 172
 negotiator, 201
 negotium, 72, 201
 nervus, 72 (note), 116
 nescio quis, 141
 nescius, 83
 neutri generis esse, 138
 neutrius partis esse, 221
 niti, 71 *f.*
 nobilis, 214
 nobilitari, 68
 nobilitas, 214
 nocturnus, 23
 nomen (debt), 207
 nominare, 69, 99
 nonae, 23
 nota, 234
 notare, 70
 novae res, 223
 novissimum agmen, 255
 novus homo, 214
 nox, 23
 noxius, 57 (note)
 nubere, 198
 nudare, 258

nudus, 251
 numen, 177
 numerare, 202
 numeri, 117, 125
 numerose cadere, 125
 numerus, 117
 nummus, 203 *f.*
 nuncupare, 182
 nundinae, 217
 nuntius, 67, 198
 nuptiae, 198
 nutus, 1, 59

 OB, 44
 obducere, 147
 obdurescere, 147
 obiectum esse, 52
 obire, 39
 obligare, 59
 obliquum agmen, 254
 obliquus, 16
 obliterari, 90
 oblivio, 89 *f.*
 obnoxium esse, 272
 obnuntiare, 184
 obortis lacrimis, 35
 obrepere, 33
 obscurus, 214
 obsecrare, 61 *f.* (note)
 obsequi, 61, 173
 obserare, 186
 obsidere, 257
 obsides, 270
 obsidio, 257
 obsignare, 144, 199
 obsitus, 189
 obsolescere, 200
 obsoletus, 136, 189
 obstare, 56
 obstringere beneficio, 59
 fide, 160
 religione, 179
 scelere, 166
 obstruere iter, 11
 luminibus, 208
 portas, 259
 obterere, 28
 obtinere dignitatem, 215 *f.*
 imperium, 226

obtinere ius, 237
 provinciam, 230
 obtingere, 230
 obtrectare, 68
 obtundere, 24
 obvenire, 230
 obversari, 76
 obviam, 14
 obvolvere caput, 24
 occaecari, 49, 167
 occasio, 48
 occasus solis, 6, 9
 occidens, 9
 occidentalis, 9 (note)
 occidere, 39
 occumbere, 39
 occupare aliquem, 149
 locum, 255
 pecuniam, 203
 regnum, 226
 occupatus, 73, 211
 occurrere, 263
 Oceanus, 5
 oculus, 27, 126
 odium, 161 *f.*
 odor, 209, 224
 offendere, 14, 168 *f.*
 offensio, 168 *f.*, 220
 officiosus, 172
 officium, 172 *f.*
 oleum, 71
 Olympia (ludi), 120
 omen, 184 *f.*
 omittere occasionem, 48
 pila, 264
 timorem, 150
 onerare, 168
 onerarius, 272
 opem ferre, 54 *f.*
 opera, 71 *f.* (note)
 opes, 55 *f.*, 220
 opifex, 1
 opinio, 79 *f.*
 oppetere, 39
 oppidum, 9, 257 *f.*
 opponere, 108 *f.*
 opportunitas loci, 9
 oppressum esse, 38, 207
 oppugnare, 258 *f.*

- optimates, 222 *f.*
 optio, 82 *f.*
 opus, 71 (note), 208,
 oraculum, 183
 orare, 61, 240
 oratio, 122, 124 *f.*
 orator, 122
 orbare, 28
 orbatus, 213
 orbem facere, 265
 orbis finiens, 6
 lacteus, 7
 medius, 7
 signifer, 7
 terrarum, 2
 orcus, 177
 ordo equester, 214
 litterarum, 140
 senatorius, 214
 temporum, 112
 verborum, 138
 Orestes, 115 (note)
 oriens, 9
 orientalis, 9 (note)
 origo, 31
 oriundus, 31
 ortus solis, 6
 os, oris, 66
 ostendere, 100, 154
 ostium, 186
 otiosus, 73, 212
 otium, 73 *f.*, 212
 ovum, 192

 PABULATUM ire, 257
 pacta merces, 61
 pactio, 259, 270
 paeninsula, 10
 paenitere, 148 (note)
 palliatus, 189
 palma, 61
 paludatus, 189
 palus, 245
 pandere, 274
 panis, 190
 pannus, 189
 parare (with *Infin.*), 43
 aliquid, 86
 bellum, 251
 parare copias, 247
 insidias, 169
 nuptias, 198
 perniciem, 52
 parcere, 71, 191
 parentare, 183
 pārēre (obey), 167
 pārēre sibi, 68
 verba, 137
 victoriam, 269
 intra parietes, 196
 parietinae, 185 (note)
 par pari referre, 60
 pars, 46, 107
 pars maior, 235
 partes (party), 221
 (rôle), 119
 (species), 104
 parte virili (pro), 30
 particeps, 173
 partiendi spinae, 105
 partiri, 105
 pascere gregem, 210
 oculos, 27
 passim, 16
 passus, 11
 patentia ruinis, 258
 patere, 10 (note), 138, 193
 paterfamilias, 187
 patria, 31, 40, 225
 patria urbs, 31
 patricius, 222
 patrimonium, 192
 patronus, 241
 paupertas, 55 *f.*
 pax, 270 *f.*
 peccare, 133
 pecorum modo, 264 (note)
 pectus, 101, 157 (note)
 pecuaria res, 210
 peculatus, 242
 pecunia, 202 *f.*
 pedem referre, 266
 pedestre iter, 13
 pedibus ire, 13
 pellere animum, 145
 ex urbe, 225
 hostem, 265
 nervos, 116

pellere sensus, 29
 Penates, 186 (note)
 penes, 47
 penetrare, 2
 pensare, 60
 peragraré, 13
 percipere aliquid, 95
 fructum, 56, 209
 lactitiam, 146
 voluptatem, 74
 perculsum esse, 149
 percutere frontem, 25
 murum, 258
 rostrum, 275
 securi, 245
 percuti de caelo, 8
 perditae res, 42, 50
 perdomare, 271
 perducere ad exitum, 43
 ad suam sententiam, 78
 ad summum, 77
 perduellio, 242
 peregre, 13
 peregrinari, 13
 perennis, 4
 perfecte planeque, 93
 perfectio, 77 *f.*
 perferre legem, 217
 perfringere, 265
 perfunctus honoribus, 232
 periculis, 53
 pergere, 12
 Pericles, 19
 periclitari, 52
 periculum, 52 *f.*
 periodus, 135
 perire, 39 *f.*
 periurium, 180
 perlustrare, 126
 permanere, 78
 permiscere, 224
 permutare, 230, 271
 pernicies, 52
 perorare, 122
 perpendere, 85 *f.*
 perpeti, 152
 perpetrare, 182
 perpetua oratio, 121
 perpetui sumptus, 191

in perpetuum, 20
 perpolire, 142
 perumpere, 255
 persequi bello, 253
 hostes, 267
 ius, 237
 litteris, 140
 negotium, 62
 poenas, 163 *f.*
 vestigia, 16
 viam, 12
 perseverare, 78
 persona, 119 (note)
 persolvere fidem, 160
 poenas, 244
 praemium, 61
 stipendium, 248
 vota, 182
 perspicue dicere, 122
 perstare, 78
 persuadere, 83 *f.*
 pertinere, 10, 46
 perturbare animum, 152
 mentem, 145
 republicam, 224
 perturbationes animi, 167
 pervertere, 238
 pes, 28
 pessumdare, 52
 pestilentia, 37
 pestis, 52
 petitio, 241
 phalanx, 265
 philosophia, 101 *f.*
 physica, 102
 pictura, 117
 pilum, 251
 pinguis Minerva, 97
 plaga, 40, 268
 plana, 3
 Platonici, 102
 plaudere, 118
 plebeius, 214
 plebis dux, 223
 poculum, 190
 poema, 115
 poena, 163
 poesis, 115
 politicus, 212 (note)

- pompa, 41, 136
 ponderare, 175
 pondus, 1
 ponere ante oculos, 126 *f.*
 ponere arma, 189 (note)
 pons, 208
 popularis, 219
 porrigere dextram, 197
 porta, 14
 portenta, 76, 79
 portorium, 229
 portus, 101
 possessio, 187
 posteri, 34
 posteritas, 19 (note), 89
 posterum (in), 20
 postridie, 23
 potare, 190
 potentia, 220 *f.*
 potio, 34
 praebere aures, 24
 occasionem, 48
 potestatem, 196
 speciem, 170
 utilitatem, 56
 praecipere, 76
 praecipitare, 17, 215
 praecipuum ius, 239
 praecurrere, 17
 praedari, 257
 praedicare, 65
 praedicere, 255
 praeditus, 75
 praeesse exercitui, 249
 iudicio, 237
 quaestioni, 239
 rei publicae, 211
 praeficere exercitui, 249
 muneri, 232
 praefere verba, 181
 praeiudicata opinio, 79
 praeiudicium, 79
 praematurus, 39
 praemium, 61 *f.*
 praeruptus, 3
 praesagire, 161
 praesens animus, 152
 auxilium, 54
 medicina, 54 (note)
 praesens pecunia, 54, 202
 remedium, 54 (note)
 praesens (in), 20
 praesidium, 256
 praestare aliquem, 160
 benevolentiam, 58
 fidem, 160
 officium, 172 *f.*
 praetendere, 45
 praeterire aliquem, 83
 silentio, 127
 praetermittere occasionem, 48
 praetexere, 45
 praetoria navis, 275
 precari, 181
 preces, 181 *f.*
 premere argumentum, 106
 servitute, 227
 prensare, 230
 pretium, 202 *f.*
 primarum partium actor, 119
 primas deferre, 216
 princeps senatus, 235
 principatus, 216
 principes, 213, 222
 principia, 1
 prius habere, 8, 157
 privare, 28, 39
 privata causa, 240
 privilegium, 239 (note)
 probabilis, 80
 probare, 65, 99, 106
 probe scio, 83
 procella, 274
 proclivis, 173
 procreare, 1
 procumbere, 17
 procurare, 184
 procurrare, 9
 prodigia, 184
 prodire, 174
 producere exercitum, 260
 in scenam, 118
 sermonem, 195
 syllabam, 139
 testes, 239
 proelium, 261 *f.*
 proferre diem, 23
 fines, 10

- proferre in medium, 127
 signa, 253 (note)
 testes, 239
 proficere, 98
 proficisci a Platone, 102
 a principiis, 104
 ab aliqua re, 45
 ab exiguis initiis, 43
 ad bellum, 252
 in Sequanos, 10
 recta, 12
 Romam, 17
 profiteri artem, 114
 disciplinam, 102
 medicinam, 98
 verum, 8
 profligare, 266
 profluens, 4
 profundere, 35, 40
 profundum (in), 16
 profusus, 191
 progressus, 98
 proicere, 28, 41
 promissum, 160
 promittere, 192
 promovere, 315 (note)
 promptus, 123, 132
 promulgare, 217
 promunturium, 9
 pronuntiare, 116, 129
 pronus, 181 (note)
 propagare fines, 10
 nomen, 89
 propellere navem, 275
 propensus, 58, 173
 properare, 17
 propinare, 190
 propitius, 177
 proponere in medio, 127
 legem, 218
 merces, 202
 quaestionem, 131
 rem, 130
 sibi, 86, 100
 spem, 154
 vexillum, 260
 proposita res, 130
 propositio, 107 (note)
 proprietates, 20 (note)
- propulsare hostem, 265
 iniurias, 168
 suspicionem, 161
 proripere, 17
 prorogare imperium, 226
 in annum, 232
 proscribere, 224
 prosequi amore, 156 *f.*
 benevolentia, 58
 exsequias, 40
 honore, 88 (note)
 memoria, 88
 ominibus, 88
 proficiscentem, 13
 studiis, 88
 prospectus, 3
 prospicere casus, 213
 futura, 20
 rationibus, 56
 rei frumentariae, 248
 saluti, 54
 prosternere ad pedes, 28
 hostem, 266
 humi, 17
 provectus, 32
 provenire, 2
 proverbium, 139 *f.*, 263 (note)
 provincia, 229 (note)
 provocare, 234, 260
 proximus, 6, 21
 prudentia civilis, 213
 publicani, 51 (note)
 publicare, 224
 publice, 40
 publico carere, 186, 212
 publicum (in), 41
 publicus ager, 229
 puerilis disciplina, 97
 pugna, 260
 pugnare inter se, 110
 pulsare fores, 186
 pulsus, 29
 pulvinar, 183
 puncto temporis, 19
 punctum ferre, 231
 punire, 244
 purgare, 243 (note)
 putare, 204 (note)
 Pythagoras, 102

- Pythia (ludi), 120
 Pythium oraculum, 183
- QUADRANTES usurae, 205
 quadratum agmen, 253
 quaerere de, 239, 240
 quaesitor, 239
 quaestio, 239
 quaestiones perpetuae, 237
 quaestui habere, 202
 quaestum facere, 202 *f.*
 quantum in me est, 47
 quies, 38
 quincunx, 206
 quotus, 23
- RADICES, 2
 radicitus, 181
 rami, 2
 rapere agmen, 254
 in errorem, 81
 ratio (account), 204
 (argument), 106
 (method), 104
 (principles), 176
 (reason), 173
 (regard), 45
 (spirit), 20 (note)
 (system), 103
 (theory) 90
 ratiocinatio, 107
 rationes (interests), 56, 212
 ratus, 218
 reapse, 81
 recensere, 247
 receptus, 266
 recessus aestuum, 5
 recipere animum, 150
 in amicitiam, 63
 in civitatem, 214
 recipere (se) ad bonam frugem, 173
 ex fuga, 267 (note)
 recipiendi signum, 266
 recitare, 116
 recognoscere, 247
 reconciliare, 64
 recondere, 251
 reconditae artes, 94
 sententiae, 125
- recordatio, 89 *f.*
 recreare, 74
 recta, 12
 recte, 281
 rector civitatis, 213
 recuperare, 228
 recusare, 62
 reddere debitum, 39
 epistulam, 143
 ius, 237
 latine, 134
 rationem, 205
 verbum pro verbo, 134
 vota, 182
 redigere ad artem, 103
 ad irritum, 44
 in memoriam, 88
 in ordinem, 105
 in provinciam, 272
 in servitutem, 227
 in statum, 42
 redintegrare animum, 150
 memoriam, 88
 proelium, 262
 spem, 153
 reditus, 12
 redolere, 124
 redundare, 29, 56
 refellere, 106
 referre ad senatum, 235
 ad virtutem, 164
 gradum, 16
 gratiam, 60
 in numerum, 224
 in tabulas, 204
 signa, 315 (note)
 victoriam, 269
 reficere animum, 74
 navem, 273
 refrenare, 167
 refringere, 228, 259
 regio aspera, 3
 regnum, 227
 regula, 135 (note)
 reicere ad populum, 236
 equitatum, 265
 iudices, 242
 relaxare, 74
 religio, 178 *f.*

- relinquare domum, 13 (note)
 in controversia, 108
 in dubio, 82
 in medio, 279
 signa, 254
 relinquiæ, 141
 remiges, 273
 remittere animum, 74
 nihil ex, 165
 nuntium, 198
 studia, 93
 remittit dolor, 147
 ventus, 7
 remunerari, 60
 renuntiare amicitiam, 63
 consulem, 233
 hospitium, 193
 renovare memoriam, 88
 proelium, 262
 repellere hostem, 265
 repercutta vox, 7
 repetere memoriam, 88
 rationem, 205
 res, 57
 repetundæ, 242
 reponere in deos, 178
 reportare, 269
 reposcere, 205
 repræsentare, 88
 reprehendere, 49, 65
 reprehensio, 49, 65
 repudiare condiciones, 271
 preces, 61
 repudium, 198
 repulsa, 231
 reputare, 85
 rerum auctor, 111
 fides, 112
 natura, 1, 115
 potiri, 227
 scriptor, 111
 usus, 90
 res, 46 (note)
 res capitalis, 241
 divina, 177
 domestica, 187
 familiaris, 187
 frumentaria, 248
 ita est, 42
 res nummaria, 204 *f.*
 pecuaria, 210
 pecuniaria, 204 *f.*
 publica, 210 *f.*, 221
 romana, 110
 res adversæ, 50
 civiles, 213
 divinæ, 177
 dubiæ, 42
 externæ, 42
 fictæ, 76
 gestæ, 110 *f.*
 humanae, 42
 maritimæ, 273
 moventes, 188
 novæ, 223
 oculis subiectæ, 29
 perditæ, 42, 50
 repetere, 57
 restituere, 57
 romanae, 110
 secundæ, 50
 rescindere acta, 219
 iudicium, 243
 pontem, 208
 testamentum, 199
 resignare epistolam, 144
 testamentum, 199
 resipiscere, 173
 resonare, 7
 respicere, 45
 respirare, 150
 responsum, 131, 183
 respuere, 271
 restinguere ardorem, 158
 iran, 161
 odium, 162
 restituere, 57
 reus, 241
 revellere ianuam, 186
 portas, 259
 reversio, 13 (note)
 reverti, 13
 revocare ad artem, 90
 ad rationem, 90, 103
 histrionem, 118
 in consuetudinem, 200
 studia, 93
 rheda, 4

- Rhenus, 5
 rhetor, 121
 ridiculus, 115, 132
 rigere, 8
 rima, 185
 ripa, 4
 risus, 35
 rite, 177
 rogare, 230
 populum, 217
 sacramento, 246
 sententiam, 235
 romanus, 110
 rostra, 122
 rude donatus, 248
 rudis, 95
 ruere, 17 (note)
 ruina, 185
 rumor, 66
 rus, 13
 rusticari, 13
 rusticum opus, 209
 rusticus, rusticanus, 13
- SACRA, 177
 sacramentum, 179 (note), 246
 sacrificium, 182
 saeculum, 20
 sagum, 189
 sales, 132
 salubritas, 6
 salutare, 230
 salvare, 197
 salvus, 172 (note), 218
 sanare, 37
 sancire, 179, 218
 sanitas, 36, 173
 sanus, 29
 sapere, 172
 sapiens, 46
 satiare, 167
 satis habere, 148
 saxum, 3, 11
 scaena, 118
 scaenicus, 118
 scala, 258
 scelus, 166 (note)
 schola, 97, 102
 scientia, 95
- sciscere, 218
 scopulus, 274
 scribere emendate, 135
 heredem, 199
 historiam, 110
 leges, 219
 librum, 140
 milites, 246
 versus, 115
 scripto (de), 88
 scrupulus, 82
 secreto, 196
 secta, 102
 secunda mensa, 192
 secundo flumine, 5
 sedare controversiam, 108
 iram, 163
 sitim, 34
 tumultum, 224
 sedere, 15, 27
 sedes belli, 253
 seditio, 223
 seditiosi homines, 223
 segetes, 209
 semel, 20
 semen, 1, 209
 semisses, 205
 senatus, 234, 235
 senatus-consultum, 236
 senectus, 33
 senescere, 6
 sensus, 29
 sententia (meaning), 137
 (opinion), 79 *f.*
 sententia (ex) 62
 septentriones, 9
 sepulcrum, 41
 sepultura, 41
 sequi partes, 221
 sectam, 102
 signa, 255
 sequitur ut, 107
 serere, 209
 series rerum, 105
 serium, 132
 sermo, 129 *f.*
 sero, 23 (note)
 serpere, 66
 servare de caelo, 183

- servare fidem, 160
 officium, 172
 servire bello, 18 (note)
 cupiditatibus, 167
 iracundiae, 18 (note)
 tempori, 18
 valetudini, 18 (note)
 servitus, 227
 sevocare, 30
 sexus, 30
 Sibyllini libri, 183
 sica, 252
 sicarius, 242
 siccitas, 124
 sidus, 7
 signa conferre, 253, 263
 signare, 144
 significare, 127
 signum, 117
 silentium, 22, 127
 silex, 11
 silva, 3
 simili uti, 139
 similitudo, 1 (note), 100
 simplicitas, 59 (note)
 simulacrum, 117
 simulare, 170 (note)
 simulatio, 170
 simultas, 194
 sinceritas, 124
 singularis, 226, 262
 singulis annis, 21
 sinus, 2, 101, 157
 sistere, 255
 sitire, 34
 sitis, 34
 situs, 9
 socialis, 193 (note)
 societas, 193
 socius, 193
 socordia, 73
 Socrates, 100
 sol, 6
 solacium, 54
 solet (ut), 201
 solemnis, 182
 solidus, 94
 solitudo, 194
 sollicitare plebem, 223
 sollicitudo, 147 f.
 solum vertere, 225
 soluta oratio, 124
 solutio linguae, 123
 solvere epistulam, 144
 navem, 274
 nomen, 204
 pecuniam, 203
 poenas, 244
 vota, 182
 somnium, 38
 somnus, 38
 sonare, 137
 sonitus verborum, 136
 Sophocles, 119
 sopitum esse, 38
 spatium, 12, 20
 specie, 81
 species, 38, 78
 speciosus, 80
 spectare ad arma, 87
 alte, 77
 in orientem, 9
 magna, 86
 verba, 136
 spectator siderum, 113
 sperare, 153
 spes, 153
 spinae disserendi, 102
 partiendi, 105
 spirare, 143
 spiritus, 151
 splendidus, 214
 splendor vitae, 70
 spoliare, 227
 sponsio, 160
 sponte, 280
 stabilire, 212
 stadium, 120
 statio, 256
 stativa, 255
 statua, 117
 statuere exemplum, 100
 modum, 174
 pretium, 202
 signa, 253 (note)
 stella, 7
 sternere equum, 14
 viam, 11

- stilus 123 (note)
 stimulus, 68, 97
 stipendium, 248
 stips, 55
 stirps, 2
 stomachus, 147, 163
 strages, 268
 stragula, 189
 strictim, 126
 stringere, 251
 structura verborum, 135
 studere alicui, 58, 221
 litteris, 93
 novis rebus, 223
 partibus, 221
 studia optima, 91
 studiosus alicuius, 58, 221
 antiquitatis, 19 (note)
 virtutis, 164
 studium artium, 114
 libertatis, 228
 litterarum, 91
 partium, 221
 suadere, 217
 suavitas, 22
 subdere, 15
 subducere navem, 273
 rationem, 85
 subesse, 22
 subigere, 271
 subire animum, 76
 calamitatem, 50
 condiciones, 270
 famam, 69
 infamiam, 70
 moenia, 258
 odium, 161
 periculum, 52
 poenam, 244
 vituperationem, 66
 subiectio, 126
 subita mors, 39
 oratio, 121
 subline ferri, 16
 submergere, 4
 subsidia, 258, 261
 substruere, 11
 subtilitas disserendi, 102
 subtiliter, 107
 succedere, 231, 265
 sudor, 71
 sufficere, 231
 suffragium, 217
 sumere arma, 250
 initium, 43
 otium, 43
 sibi, 151
 spiritus, 151
 venenum, 40
 summa aqua, 3
 summa belli, 249
 summam, 127
 summissa vox, 129
 summittere, 129
 summovere, 234
 sumptus, 191
 superare, 3
 superbia, 151
 superi, 177
 superiora loca, 3
 supersedere, 71
 superstes, 34
 superstitio, 180
 superum mare, 5
 supervenire, 249
 supinus, 181 (note)
 suppeditare, 31 (note)
 suppetere, 31
 supplementum, 247
 supplicare, 180
 supplicatio, 183
 supplicium, 166
 supponere, 199
 suppressa vox, 129
 suppressere navem, 276
 supra modum, 174 (note)
 supremus dies, 39
 surgere ad dicendum, 122 (note)
 e lecto, 38
 suscipere causam, 222
 inimicitias, 63
 liberos, 30
 odium, 162
 partes, 119 (notes)
 scelus, 166
 vota, 182
 suspensum esse, 155
 suspicere, 6 (note)

suspicio, 160
 syllaba, 139
 symphoniacus, 117

TABELLAE, 217

tabescere, 147
 tabulae excepti et expensi, 204
 pictae, 117
 publicae,
 tangere, 8
 tarditas ingenii, 75
 tectum, 5, 185
 tegere, 79
 tela fortunae, 52
 telum, 251
 temere agere, 173
 temperantia, 175
 temperare, 6, 35
 temperatio, 6
 tempestas, 8
 templum, 178
 tempus, 17*f.*
 tenere animos, 123
 clavum, 211
 consuetudinem, 200
 imperium, 187
 institutum, 176
 ius, 237
 mediocritatem, 175
 memoria, 88
 principatum, 216
 propositum, 86
 teneri desiderio, 157
 iureiurando, 80
 lecto, 36
 studio, 101
 testibus, 240
 tentare animos, 145
 fortunam, 49
 tentari morbo, 36
 teretes aures, 24
 tergum, 266
 terminus, 11
 terra, 2
 terrestres, 13
 terror, 149*f.*
 tessera, 256
 testamentum, 199
 testari, 181

testimonium, 240
 testis, 240, 280
 testudo, 258
 theatrum, 118
 tibia, 116
 timor, 149*f.*
 titulus, 141 (note)
 togatus, 189 (note)
 tollere de medio, 40
 in crucem, 245
 liberos, 30
 tolerare vitam, 55, 191
 tonitru, 8
 tormentum, 170, 253
 torpere, 8
 torqueri, 155
 torrer, 8
 tractare artem, 115
 gubernaculum, 211
 tractatio, 91
 tradere artem, 115
 memoriae, 112
 se litteris, 92
 se somno, 38
 (teach), 102
 traducere ad, 78
 vitam, 31
 tragice, 128
 tragicus, 115
 tragoedia, 115
 transferre ad Romanos, 116
 bellum, 253
 ex graeco, 134
 transfigere, 251
 transigere, 108
 transitio, 215
 translatio, 135, 138
 transversus, 16
 triarii, 263
 tribuere civitatem, 214
 multum, 60
 primas, 216
 tribunus plebis, 234
 tribus, 231, 234
 tributum, 229
 trinundinum, 217
 triplex acies, 261
 agmen, 255
 trita via, 11

- tritae aures, 24
 triumphus, 269
 trivio (in), 12
 tuba, 257
 tumultus, 224 (note)
 tunicatus, 189 (note)
 turbare mare, 5
 mentem, 145
 omnia, 224
 ordines, 254
 turbator vulgi, 223
 turpis, 164
 turris, 208
 tus, 182
 tuto (in), 53
 tyrannis, 226

 UBERTAS, 125
 ulcisci, 163 *f.*
 ultimae terrae, 11
 ultro citroque, 16
 umbilicus, 3
 umbracula, 98 (note)
 umbratilis, 94 (note)
 unguiculis (ab), 32
 universitas rerum, 1
 unus, 21 (note)
 urbs patria, 31
 urere, 8
 usura, 203, 205
 usus (experience), 90
 (utility), 56
 uti aliquo, 62
 crudelitate, 84 (note)
 magistro, 96
 prudentia, 84 (note)
 solacio, 55
 suo consilio, 84
 suo iudicio, 83
 valetudine bona, 84 (note)
 verbis, 136
 utilitas, 56
 uxor, 198

 VACARE, 72
 vacatio, 247
 vacillare, 88
 vadum, 4
 vagina, 251

 vagus, 7
 valedicere, 197 (note)
 valere eloquentia, 121
 memoria, 88
 valetudo, 36 (note)
 vallum, 256, 258
 valva, 186
 varietas caeli, 6
 vasa, 257
 vastare, 257
 vectigal, 51
 vectores, 273
 vehi, 14
 velle alicuius causa, 58
 aliquem, 196
 velum, 273
 venalis, 59 (note)
 vendere, 228
 veneficia, 242
 venenum, 40
 veneo, 228 (note)
 venerari, 177
 venia, 156
 venire ad gladium, 264
 in dubium, 81
 in mentem, 76
 in morem, 200
 in oblivionem, 89
 in proverbium, 139
 in sermonem, 67
 in vituperationem, 66
 obviam, 14
 ventus, 5, 7
 ver, 22
 verba copulata, 139
 dare, 171
 facere, 122
 verbi causa, 99 (note)
 verbis alicuius, 136
 verbum (ad), 136
 vergere, 9
 verisimilis, 80
 veritas, 80 (note)
 verno tempore, 22
 versari ante oculos, 28
 in angustiis, 42
 in discrimine, 53
 in ore, 66
 in periculo, 53

- versari in suis nummis, 207
 versura, 207
 versus, 115, 116
 vertente anno, 21
 vertere crimini, 66
 in omen, 184
 manum, 25
 stilum, 123 (note)
 (translate), 134
 vitio, 243
 vertex caeli, 7
 verum, 80
 vesperascente die, 22
 vespertinus, 23
 vestigium, 16
 vestis, 189 *f.*
 vestiti montes, 3
 Vesuvius, 8
 vetare, 139, 218
 veteranus, 248
 vetus, 19 (note)
 vetus est, 139
 vetustas, 51, 139
 vexillum, 260
 via, 11
 via et ratione, 104
 vicem, 147 (note)
 vicinus, 10 (note)
 vicissitudines, 22, 51
 victima, 182
 victoria, 269
 victus, 190
 videre, 23, 126
 videri, 170
 vigere, 66
 vigiliae, 256
 villa, 9
 vim inferre, 39, 169
 vincere, 115
 vincere animum, 167
 argumentis, 106
 causa, 241
 Olympia, 120
 vinculum, 63, 228, 245
 vindicare ab interitu, 52
 vindicare ab oblivione, 90
 in libertatem, 229
 vinca, 258
 vires, 30, 72
 viribus (pro), 72
 virili parte (pro), 30
 virtus, 164 *f.*
 virus, 163
 vis, 169, 252
 dicendi, 121
 verbi, 137
 vita, 31 (note), 40, 53
 honestas, 164
 moresque, 103
 occupata, 211
 rusticana, 13
 vitia, 165
 vitium sermonis, 133
 vituperatio, 66
 viva aqua, 4
 vivere, 32 (note)
 vivere bene, 191
 in diem, 23
 vocabulum, 138
 vocare ad calculos, 204
 ad cenam, 192
 ad exitium, 52
 in controversiam, 108
 in dubium, 82
 in invidiam, 162
 in iudicium, 237
 in periculum, 53
 in suspicionem, 53
 volubilitas, 133
 volumen, 140
 voluntaria mors, 39
 voluntarii, 247
 voluptas, 74 *f.*
 votum, 182
 vox, 7, 138
 vulnus, 268
 vulpes, 264 (note)
 vultus, 28
 Zenonis schola, 132

Pott 8vo, Eighteenpence each.

The following contain Introductions, Notes, and **Vocabularies**, and in some cases **Exercises**.

ACCIDENCE, LATIN, AND EXERCISES ARRANGED FOR BEGINNERS.—

By W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

AESCHYLUS.—**PROMETHEUS VINCTUS.** By Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.

ARRIAN.—**SELECTIONS.** With Exercises. By Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

AULUS GELLIUS, STORIES FROM.—Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A., Assistant Master at Westminster.

CAESAR.—**THE HELVETIAN WAR.** Selections from Book I., adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

THE INVASION OF BRITAIN. Selections from Books IV. and V., adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By the same.

SCENES FROM BOOKS V. AND VI. By C. COLBECK, M.A.

TALES OF THE CIVIL WAR. By C. H. KEENE, M.A.

THE GALLIC WAR. BOOK I. By Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

BOOKS II. AND III. By the Rev. W. G. RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D.

BOOK IV. By CLEMENT BRYANS, M.A.

BOOK V. By C. COLBECK, M.A., Assistant Master at Harrow.

BOOK VI. By C. COLBECK, M.A.

BOOK VII. By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

THE CIVIL WAR. BOOK I. By M. MONTGOMREY, M.A.

CICERO.—**DE SENECTUTE.** By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.

DE AMICITIA. By the same.

STORIES OF ROMAN HISTORY. Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By Rev. G. E. JEANS, M.A., and A. V. JONES, M.A.

CURTIVS (Quintus).—**SELECTIONS.** Adapted for Beginners. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises. By F. COVERLEY SMITH.

EURIPIDES. ALCESTIS. By Rev. M. A. BAYFIELD, M.A.

MEDEA. By Rev. M. A. BAYFIELD, M.A.

HECUBA. By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

EUTROPIUS.—Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

BOOKS I. and II. By the same.

EXERCISES IN UNSEEN TRANSLATION IN LATIN. By W. WELCH, M.A., and Rev. C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

HERODOTUS, TALES FROM. Atticised. By G. S. FARNELL, M.A.

HOMER.—**ILIAD. BOOK I.** By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

BOOK VI. By WALTER LEAF, Litt.D., and Rev. M. A. BAYFIELD.

BOOK XVIII. By S. R. JAMES, M.A., Assistant Master at Eton.

BOOK XXIV. By W. LEAF, Litt.D., and Rev. M. A. BAYFIELD, M.A.

ODYSSEY. BOOK I. By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

HORACE.—**ODES. BOOKS I. II. III. AND IV. separately.** By T. E. PAGE, M.A., Assistant Master at the Charterhouse. Each 1s. 6d.

LIVY.—**BOOK I.** By H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.

BOOK V. By M. ALFORD.

BOOK XXI. Adapted from Mr. Capes's Edition. By J. E. MELHUISE, M.A.

BOOK XXII. Adapted from Mr. Capes's Edition. By J. E. MELHUISE, M.A.

SELECTIONS FROM BOOKS V. and VI. By W. CECIL LAMING, M.A.

THE HANNIBALIAN WAR. BOOKS XXI. and XXII. adapted by G. C. MACAULAY, M.A.

BOOKS XXIII. and XXIV. adapted by the same. [*In preparation.*]

THE SIEGE OF SYRACUSE. Being part of BOOKS XXIV. and XXV., adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By G. RICHARDS, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

LEGENDS OF ANCIENT ROME. Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By H. WILKINSON, M.A.

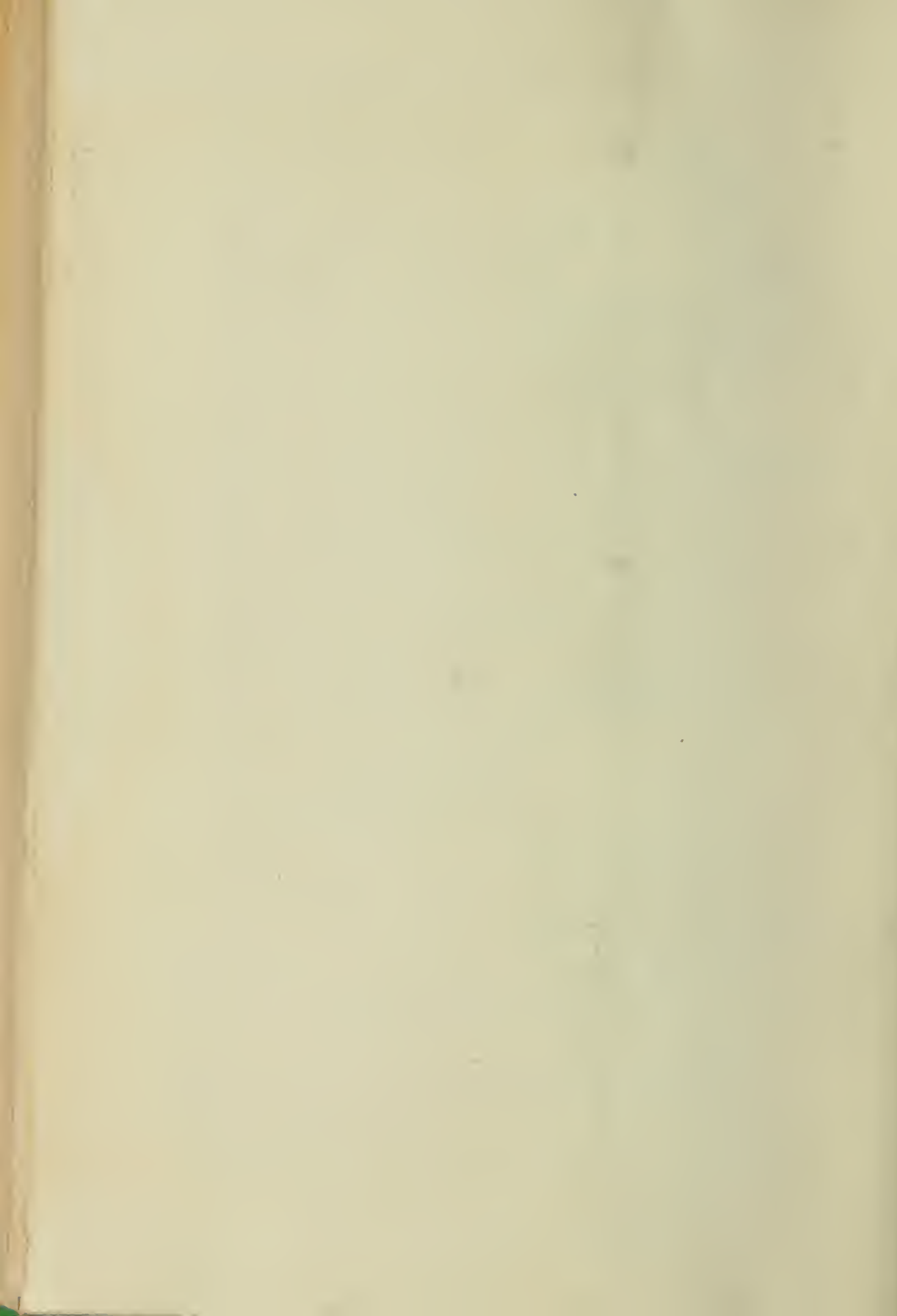
LUCIAN.—**EXTRACTS FROM LUCIAN.** With Exercises. By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

ELEMENTARY CLASSICS.

Pott 8vo., Eighteenpence each.

- NEPOS.**—SELECTIONS ILLUSTRATIVE OF GREEK AND ROMAN HISTORY. With Exercises. By G. S. FARNELL, M.A.
- OVID.**—SELECTIONS. By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.
- EASY SELECTIONS FROM OVID IN ELEGIAC VERSE.** With Exercises. By H. WILKINSON, M.A.
- METAMORPHOSES. BOOK I.** By CHARLES SIMMONS, M.A. [In preparation.]
- STORIES FROM THE METAMORPHOSES.** With Exercises. By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.
- TRISTIA.**—BOOK I. By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A. [In preparation.]
- BOOK III.** By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A. [In preparation.]
- PHAEDRUS.**—By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A. [In preparation.]
- SELECT FABLES.** Adapted for Beginners. By Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.
- THUCYDIDES.**—THE RISE OF THE ATHENIAN EMPIRE. BOOK I. CHS. 89-117 and 228-238. With Exercises. By F. H. COLSON, M.A.
- THE FALL OF PLATAEA, AND THE PLAGUE AT ATHENS.** From BOOKS II. and III. By W. T. SUTHERY, M.A., and A. S. GRAVES, B.A.
- VIRGIL.**—SELECTIONS. By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.
- BUCOLICS.** By T. E. PAGE, M.A.
- GEORGICS. BOOK I.** By T. E. PAGE, M.A.
- BOOK II.** By Rev. J. H. SKRINE, M.A.
- BOOK III.** By T. E. PAGE, M.A. [In preparation.]
- BOOK IV.** By T. E. PAGE, M.A. [In preparation.]
- AENEID. BOOK I.** By Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.
- BOOK I.** By T. E. PAGE, M.A.
- BOOK II.** By T. E. PAGE, M.A.
- BOOK III.** By T. E. PAGE, M.A.
- BOOK IV.** By Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.
- BOOK V.** By Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A.
- BOOK VI.** By T. E. PAGE, M.A.
- BOOK VII.** By Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A.
- BOOK VIII.** By Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A.
- BOOK IX.** By Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.
- BOOK X.** By S. G. OWEN, M.A.
- XENOPHON.**—ANABASIS. Selections, adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.
- BOOK I.** With Exercises. By E. A. WELLS, M.A.
- BOOK I.** By Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.
- BOOK II.** By Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.
- BOOK III.** By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A.
- BOOK IV.** By Rev. E. D. STONE, M.A.
- BOOK V.** By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A.
- BOOK VI.** By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A.
- SELECTIONS FROM BOOK IV.** With Exercises. By Rev. E. D. STONE, M.A.
- SELECTIONS FROM THE CYROPAEDIA.** With Exercises. By A. H. COOKE, M.A.
- TALES FROM THE CYROPAEDIA.** With Exercises. By C. H. KEENE, M.A.
- SELECTIONS ILLUSTRATIVE OF GREEK LIFE.** By C. H. KEENE, [In preparation.]
- The following contain Introductions and Notes, but no Vocabulary :—
- CICERO.**—SELECT LETTERS. By Rev. G. E. JEANS, M.A.
- HERODOTUS.**—SELECTIONS FROM BOOKS VII. and VIII. THE EXPEDITION OF XERXES. By A. H. COOKE, M.A.
- HORACE.**—SELECTIONS FROM THE SATIRES AND EPISTLES. By Rev. W. J. V. BAKER, M.A.
- SELECT EPODES AND ARS POETICA.** By H. A. DALTON, M.A.
- PLATO.**—EUTHYPHRO AND MENEXENUS. By C. E. GRAVES, M.A.
- TERENCE.**—SCENES FROM THE ANDRIA. By F. W. CORNISH, M.A., Assistant Master at Eton.
- THE GREEK ELEGIAC POETS.**—FROM CALLINUS TO CALLIMACHUS. Selected by Rev. HERBERT KYNASTON, D.D.
- THUCYDIDES.**—BOOK IV. CHS. 1-41. THE CAPTURE OF SPHACTERIA. By C. E. GRAVES, M.A.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.



LaL.D
M5156kx
.Fa

Meissner, Carl

Latin phrase-book; trans. by Auden.

258732

University of Toronto
Library

DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET

Acme Library Card Pocket
LOWE-MARTIN CO. LIMITED

